

SUPERSINGULAR LOCUS OF HILBERT MODULAR VARIETIES, ARITHMETIC LEVEL RAISING, AND SELMER GROUPS

YIFENG LIU AND YICHAO TIAN

ABSTRACT. This article has three goals. First, we generalize the result of Deuring and Serre on the characterization of supersingular locus to all Shimura varieties given by totally indefinite quaternion algebras over totally real number fields. Second, we generalize the result of Ribet on arithmetic level raising to such Shimura varieties in the inert case. Third, as an application to number theory, we use the previous results to study the Selmer group of certain triple product motive of an elliptic curve, in the context of the Bloch–Kato conjecture.

CONTENTS

| | |
|--|----|
| 1. Introduction | 2 |
| 1.1. Supersingular locus of Hilbert modular varieties | 2 |
| 1.2. Arithmetic level raising for Hilbert modular varieties | 3 |
| 1.3. Selmer group of triple product motive | 5 |
| 1.4. Structure and strategies | 6 |
| 1.5. Notation and conventions | 6 |
| 2. Shimura varieties and moduli interpretations | 7 |
| 2.1. Quaternionic Shimura varieties | 8 |
| 2.2. An auxiliary CM extension | 8 |
| 2.3. Unitary Shimura varieties | 9 |
| 2.4. Moduli interpretation for unitary Shimura varieties | 10 |
| 2.5. Moduli interpretation for totally indefinite quaternionic Shimura varieties | 12 |
| 2.6. Comparison of quaternionic and unitary moduli problems | 16 |
| 3. Goren–Oort cycles and supersingular locus | 17 |
| 3.1. Notation and conventions | 18 |
| 3.2. Hasse invariants | 18 |
| 3.3. Goren–Oort divisors | 20 |
| 3.4. Periodic semi-meanders | 21 |
| 3.5. Goren–Oort cycles and supersingular locus | 22 |
| 3.6. Applications to quaternionic Shimura varieties | 26 |
| 3.7. Totally indefinite quaternionic Shimura varieties | 27 |
| 4. Arithmetic level raising | 28 |
| 4.1. Statement of arithmetic level raising | 28 |
| 4.2. Proof of arithmetic level raising | 31 |
| 5. Selmer groups of triple product motives | 36 |
| 5.1. Main theorem | 36 |
| 5.2. A refinement of arithmetic level raising | 39 |
| 5.3. Second explicit reciprocity law | 40 |
| 5.4. First explicit reciprocity law | 44 |
| 5.5. Proof of main theorem | 44 |

Date: June 14, 2017.

2010 Mathematics Subject Classification. 11G05, 11R34, 14G35.

1. INTRODUCTION

The study of special locus of moduli spaces of abelian varieties starts from Deuring and Serre. Let $N \geq 4$ be an integer and p a prime not dividing N . Let $Y_0(N)$ be the coarse moduli scheme over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$ parameterizing elliptic curves with a cyclic subgroup of order N . Let $Y_0(N)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{ss}}$ denote the supersingular locus of the special fiber $Y_0(N)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$, which is a closed subscheme of dimension zero. Deuring and Serre proved the following deep result (see, for example [Ser96]) characterizing the supersingular locus:

$$(1.0.1) \quad Y_0(N)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{ss}}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}) \cong B^\times \backslash \widehat{B}^\times / \widehat{R}^\times.$$

Here, B is the definition quaternion algebra over \mathbf{Q} ramified at p , and $R \subseteq B$ is any Eichler order of level N . Moreover, the induced action of the Frobenius element on $B^\times \backslash \widehat{B}^\times / \widehat{R}^\times$ coincides with the Hecke action given by the uniformizer of $B \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{Q}_p$.

One main application of the above result is to study congruence of modular forms. Let $f = q + a_2q^2 + a_3q^3 + \dots$ be a normalized cusp new form of level $\Gamma_0(N)$ and weight 2. Let \mathfrak{m}_f be the ideal of the away-from- Np Hecke algebra generated by $T_v - a_v$ for all primes $v \nmid Np$. We assume that f is not dihedral. Take a sufficiently large prime ℓ , not dividing $Np(p^2 - 1)$. Using the isomorphism (1.0.1) and the Abel–Jacobi map (over \mathbf{F}_{p^2}), one can construct a map

$$(1.0.2) \quad \Gamma(B^\times \backslash \widehat{B}^\times / \widehat{R}^\times, \mathbf{F}_\ell) / \mathfrak{m}_f \rightarrow H^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^2}, H^1(Y_0(N) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{F}_\ell(1)) / \mathfrak{m}_f)$$

where $\Gamma(B^\times \backslash \widehat{B}^\times / \widehat{R}^\times, \mathbf{F}_\ell)$ denotes the space of \mathbf{F}_ℓ -valued functions on $B^\times \backslash \widehat{B}^\times / \widehat{R}^\times$. In [Rib90], Ribet proved that the map (1.0.2) is surjective. Note that the right-hand side is nonzero if and only if $\ell \mid a_p^2 - (p+1)^2$, in which case the dimension is 1. From this, one can construct a normalized cusp new form g of level $\Gamma_0(Np)$ and weight 2 such that $f \equiv g \pmod{\ell}$ when $\ell \mid a_p^2 - (p+1)^2$.

This article has three goals. First, we generalize the result of Deuring and Serre to all Shimura varieties given by totally indefinite quaternion algebras over totally real number fields. Second, we generalize the result of Ribet to such Shimura varieties in the inert case. Third, as an application to number theory, we use the previous results to study Selmer groups of certain triple product motives of elliptic curves, in the context of the Bloch–Kato conjecture.

For the rest of Introduction, we denote F a totally real number field, and B a *totally indefinite* quaternion algebra over F . Put $G = \text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} B^\times$ as a reductive group over \mathbf{Q} .

1.1. Supersingular locus of Hilbert modular varieties. Let p be a rational prime that is unramified in F . Denote by Σ_p the set of all places of F above p . For every $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$, we put $g_{\mathfrak{p}} = [F_{\mathfrak{p}} : \mathbf{Q}_p]$ and assume that B is unramified at \mathfrak{p} . Fix a maximal order \mathcal{O}_B in B . Let $K^p \subseteq G(\mathbf{A}^\infty)$ be a neat open compact subgroup in the sense of Definition 2.6. We have a coarse moduli scheme $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$ parameterizing abelian varieties with real multiplication by \mathcal{O}_B and K^p -level structure (see §2.5 for details). Its generic fiber is a Shimura variety; in particular, we have the following well-known complex uniformization

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)(\mathbf{C}) \cong G(\mathbf{Q}) \backslash (\mathbf{C} - \mathbf{R})^{[F:\mathbf{Q}]} \times G(\mathbf{A}^\infty) / K^p K_p,$$

where K_p is a hyperspecial maximal subgroup of $G(\mathbf{Q}_p)$. The supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$, that is, the maximal closed subset of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}$ on which the parameterized abelian variety (over \mathbf{F}_p^{ac}) has supersingular p -divisible group, descends to \mathbf{F}_p , denoted by $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{ss}}$. Our first result provides a global description of the subscheme $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{ss}}$.

To state our theorem, we need to introduce another Shimura variety. Let B' be the quaternion algebra over F , unique up to isomorphism, such that the Hasse invariants of B' and B differ exactly

at all archimedean places and all $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$ with $g_{\mathfrak{p}}$ odd. Similarly, put $G' = \text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} B'^{\times}$ and identify $G'(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$ with $G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$. There is a Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G', K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^h}}$ of dimension zero over \mathbf{F}_{p^h} with $h = \max\{(1 + g_{\mathfrak{p}} - 2\lfloor g_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)g_{\mathfrak{p}} \mid \mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p\}$ such that

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G', K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^h}}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}) \cong G'(\mathbf{Q}) \backslash G'(\mathbf{A}^{\infty}) / K^p K'_p,$$

where K'_p is a maximal subgroup of $G'(\mathbf{Q}_p)$.

Theorem 1.1. (Theorem 3.12) *We have¹*

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SS}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{p^h} = \bigcup_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} W(\mathfrak{a}).$$

Here

- \mathfrak{B} is a set of cardinality $\prod_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p} \binom{g_{\mathfrak{p}}}{\lfloor g_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor}$ equipped with a natural action by $\text{Gal}(\mathbf{F}_{p^h}/\mathbf{F}_p)$;
- each $W(\mathfrak{a})$ is a $(\sum_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p} \lfloor g_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration over $\mathbf{Sh}(G', K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^h}}$, equivariant under prime-to- p Hecke correspondences.

In particular, $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SS}}$ is proper and of equidimension $\sum_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p} \lfloor g_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor$.

If p is inert in F of degree 2 and B is the matrix algebra, then the results was first proved in [BG99]. If p is inert in F of degree 4 and B is the matrix algebra, then the results was due to [Yu03]. Assume that p is inert in F of even degree. Then the strata $W(\mathfrak{a})$ have already been constructed in [TX14], and the authors proved there that, under certain genericity conditions on the Satake parameters of a fixed automorphic cuspidal representation π , the cycles $W(\mathfrak{a})$ give all the π -isotypic Tate cycles on $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$.

Similarly, one can define the superspecial locus $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}}$ of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$, that is, the maximal closed subset of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}$ on which the parameterized abelian variety has superspecial p -divisible group. It is a scheme over \mathbf{F}_p of dimension zero. We have the following result.

Theorem 1.2 (Theorem 3.15). *Assume that $g_{\mathfrak{p}}$ is odd for every $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$. For each $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}$ as in the previous theorem, $W(\mathfrak{a})$ contains the superspecial locus $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{p^h}$, and the iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration $\pi_{\mathfrak{a}}: W(\mathfrak{a}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G', K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^h}}$ induces an isomorphism*

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{p^h} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sh}(G', K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^h}}$$

compatible with prime-to- p Hecke correspondences.

A main application of the global description of the supersingular locus is to study the level raising phenomenon, as we will explain in the next section.

1.2. Arithmetic level raising for Hilbert modular varieties. We suppose that $g = [F : \mathbf{Q}]$ is odd. Fix an irreducible cuspidal automorphic representation Π of $\text{GL}_2(\mathbf{A}_F)$ of parallel weight 2 defined over a number field \mathbf{E} . Let B, G be as in the previous section; and let K be a neat open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty})$. Then we have the Shimura variety $\text{Sh}(G, K)$ defined over \mathbf{Q} . Let \mathbf{R} be a finite set of places of F away from which Π is unramified and K is hyperspecial maximal.

Let p be a rational prime inert in F such that the unique prime \mathfrak{p} of F above p is not in \mathbf{R} . Then $K = K^p K_p$ and $\text{Sh}(G, K)$ has a canonical integral model $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$ as in the previous section. We also choose a prime λ of \mathbf{E} and put $k_{\lambda} = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda$.

Let $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R}}]$ (resp. $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\}}]$) be the (abstract) spherical Hecke algebra of $\text{GL}_{2,F}$ away from \mathbf{R} (resp. $\mathbf{R} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\}$). Then Π induces a homomorphism

$$\phi_{\Pi, \lambda}: \mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R}}] \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}} \rightarrow k_{\lambda}$$

¹The notation here is simplified. In fact, in the main text and particularly Theorem 3.12, $B', G', \mathfrak{B}, \mathfrak{a}$ and $W(\mathfrak{a})$ are denoted by $B_{\text{Smax}}, G_{\text{Smax}}, \mathfrak{B}_{\emptyset}, \mathfrak{a}$ and $W_{\emptyset}(\mathfrak{a})$, respectively.

via Hecke eigenvalues. Put $\mathfrak{m} = \ker(\phi_{\Pi, \lambda}|_{\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\text{RU}}\{\mathfrak{p}\}]})$.

The Hecke algebra $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\text{RU}}\{\mathfrak{p}\}]$ acts on the (étale) cohomology group $\mathbf{H}^\bullet(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}, k_\lambda)$. Let $\Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G', K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), *)$ be the abelian group of $*$ -valued functions on $\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G', K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$, which admits the Hecke action of $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\text{RU}}\{\mathfrak{p}\}]$ via the second factor. We have a Chow cycle class map

$$\Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathbf{Z}) \rightarrow \text{CH}^{(g+1)/2}(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}})$$

sending a function f on $\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$ to the Chow class of $\sum_{\mathfrak{a}, s} f(\mathfrak{a}, s) \pi_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}(s)$, which is $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\text{RU}}\{\mathfrak{p}\}]$ -equivariant. We will show that under certain “large image” assumption on the mod- λ Galois representation attached to Π , the above Chow cycle class map (eventually) induces the following Abel–Jacobi map

$$(1.2.1) \quad \Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G', K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), k_\lambda) / \mathfrak{m} \rightarrow \mathbf{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \mathbf{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda((g+1)/2))) / \mathfrak{m}.$$

See §4.1 for more details. The following theorem is what we call *arithmetic level raising*.

Theorem 1.3 (Theorem 4.7). *Suppose that p is a λ -level raising prime in the sense of Definition 4.5. In particular, we have the following equalities in k_λ :*

$$\phi_{\Pi, \lambda}(\mathbf{T}_{\mathfrak{p}})^2 = (p^g + 1)^2, \quad \phi_{\Pi, \lambda}(\mathbf{S}_{\mathfrak{p}}) = 1,$$

where $\mathbf{T}_{\mathfrak{p}}$ (resp. $\mathbf{S}_{\mathfrak{p}}$) is the (spherical) Hecke operator at \mathfrak{p} represented by $\begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in \text{GL}_2(\mathbf{F}_{\mathfrak{p}})$ (resp. $\begin{pmatrix} p & 0 \\ 0 & p \end{pmatrix} \in \text{GL}_2(\mathbf{F}_{\mathfrak{p}})$). Then the map (1.2.1) is surjective.

As we will point out in Remarks 4.2 and 4.6, if there exist rational primes inert in F , and Π is not dihedral and not isomorphic to a twist by a character of any of its internal conjugates, then for all but finitely many prime λ , there are infinitely many (with positive density) rational primes p that are λ -level raising primes.

Suppose that the Jacquet–Langlands transfer of Π to B exists, say Π_B . If $(\Pi_B^{\infty, p})^{K^p}$ has dimension 1 and there is no other automorphic representation of $B^\times(\mathbf{A}_F)$ (of parallel weight 2, unramified at \mathfrak{p} , and with nontrivial K^p -invariant vectors) congruent to Π_B modulo λ , then the target of (1.2.1) has dimension $\binom{g}{(g-1)/2}$ over k_λ .

Remark 1.4. In principle, our method can be applied to prove a theorem similar to Theorem 1.3 when B is not necessarily totally indefinite but the “supersingular locus”, defined in an *ad hoc* way if B is not totally indefinite, still appears in the near middle dimension. In fact, the proof of Theorem 1.3 will be reduced to the case where B is indefinite at only one archimedean places (that is, the corresponding Shimura variety $\text{Sh}(B)$ is a curve). However, we decide not to pursue the most general scenario as that would make the exposition much more complicated and technical. On the other hand, we would like to point out that arithmetic level raising when $1 < \dim \text{Sh}(B) < [F : \mathbf{Q}]$ has arithmetic application as well, for example, to bound the triple product Selmer group (see the next section) with respect to the cubic extension F/F^{\flat} of totally real number fields with $F^{\flat} \neq \mathbf{Q}$.

Let us explain the meaning of Theorem 1.3. Suppose that Π admits Jacquet–Langlands transfer, say Π_B , to B^\times such that $\Pi_B^K \neq \{0\}$. Then the right-hand side of (1.2.1) is *nonzero*. In particular, under the assumption of Theorem 1.3, the left-hand side of (1.2.1) is nonzero as well. One can then deduce that there is an (algebraic) automorphic representation Π' of $G'(\mathbf{A}) = B'^{\times}(\mathbf{A}_F)$ (trivial at ∞) such that the associated Galois representations of Π' and Π with coefficient $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda$ are isomorphic. However, it is obvious that Π' cannot be the Jacquet–Langlands transfer of Π , as B' is ramified at \mathfrak{p} while Π is unramified at \mathfrak{p} . In this sense, Theorem 1.3 reveals certain level raising phenomenon. Moreover, this theorem does not only prove the existence of level raising, but also provides an explicit way to realize the congruence relation behind the level raising through the Abel–Jacobi map (1.2.1). As this process involves cycle classes and local Galois cohomology, we prefer to call Theorem 1.3 *arithmetic level raising*. This is crucial for our later arithmetic application. Namely,

we will use this arithmetic level raising theorem to bound certain Selmer groups, as we will explain in the next section.

1.3. Selmer group of triple product motive. In this section, we assume that $g = [F : \mathbf{Q}] = 3$; in other words, F is a totally real cubic number field.

Let E be an elliptic curve over F . We have the \mathbf{Q} -motive $\otimes \text{Ind}_{\mathbf{Q}}^F \mathfrak{h}^1(E)$ (with coefficient \mathbf{Q}) of rank 8, which is the multiplicative induction of the F -motive $\mathfrak{h}^1(E)$ to \mathbf{Q} . The *cubic-triple product motive* of E is defined to be

$$\mathbf{M}(E) := (\otimes \text{Ind}_{\mathbf{Q}}^F \mathfrak{h}^1(E))(2).$$

It is canonically polarized. For every prime p , the p -adic realization of $\mathbf{M}(E)$, denoted by $\mathbf{M}(E)_p$, is a Galois representation of \mathbf{Q} of dimension 8 with \mathbf{Q}_p -coefficients. In fact, up to a twist, it is the multiplicative induction from F to \mathbf{Q} of the rational p -adic Tate module of E .

Now we assume that E is modular. Then it gives rise to an irreducible cuspidal automorphic representation Π_E of $(\text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} \text{GL}_{2,F})(\mathbf{A}) = \text{GL}_2(\mathbf{A}_F)$ with trivial central character. Denote by $\tau: {}^L G \rightarrow \text{GL}_8(\mathbf{C})$ the triple product L -homomorphism [PSR87, §0], and $L(s, \Pi_E, \tau)$ the triple product L -function, which has a meromorphic extension to the complex plane by [Gar87, PSR87]. Moreover, we have a functional equation

$$L(s, \Pi_E, \tau) = \epsilon(\Pi_E, \tau) C(\Pi_E, \tau)^{1/2-s} L(1-s, \Pi_E, \tau)$$

for some $\epsilon(\Pi_E, \tau) \in \{\pm 1\}$ and positive integer $C(\Pi_E, \tau)$. The global root number $\epsilon(\Pi_E, \tau)$ is the product of local ones: $\epsilon(\Pi_E, \tau) = \prod_v \epsilon(\Pi_{E,v}, \tau)$, where v runs over all places of \mathbf{Q} . Here, we have $\epsilon(\Pi_{E,v}, \tau) \in \{\pm 1\}$ and that it equals 1 for all but finitely many v . Put

$$\Sigma(\Pi_E, \tau) = \{v \mid \epsilon(\Pi_{E,v}, \tau) = -1\}.$$

In particular, the set $\Sigma(\Pi_E, \tau)$ contains ∞ . We have $L(s, \mathbf{M}(E)) = L(s + 1/2, \Pi_E, \tau)$.

Now we assume that E satisfies Assumption 5.1. In particular, $\Sigma(\Pi_E, \tau)$ has odd cardinality. Let B^\flat be the indefinite quaternion algebra over \mathbf{Q} with the ramification set $\Sigma(\Pi_E, \tau) - \{\infty\}$, and put $B = B^\flat \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} F$. Put $G = \text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} B^\times$ as before. We will define neat open compact subgroups $K_{\mathfrak{r}} \subseteq G(\mathbf{A})$, indexed by certain integral ideals \mathfrak{r} of F . Then we have the Shimura threefold $\text{Sh}(G, K_{\mathfrak{r}})$ over \mathbf{Q} . Put $G^\flat = (B^\flat)^\times$ and let $K_{\mathfrak{r}}^\flat \subseteq G^\flat(\mathbf{A})$ be induced from $K_{\mathfrak{r}}$. Then we have the Shimura curve $\text{Sh}(G^\flat, K_{\mathfrak{r}}^\flat)$ over \mathbf{Q} with a canonical finite morphism to $\text{Sh}(G, K_{\mathfrak{r}})$. Using this 1-cycle, we obtain, under certain conditions, a class

$$\Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r}} \in \mathbf{H}_f^1(\mathbf{Q}_p, \mathbf{M}(E)_p)^{\oplus a(\mathfrak{r})},$$

where $\mathbf{H}_f^1(\mathbf{Q}_p, \mathbf{M}(E)_p)$ is the *Bloch–Kato Selmer group* (Definition 5.4) of the Galois representation $\mathbf{M}(E)_p$ (with coefficient \mathbf{Q}_p), and $a(\mathfrak{r}) > 0$ is some integer depending on \mathfrak{r} . See §5.1 for more details of this construction. We have the following theorem on bounding the Bloch–Kato Selmer group using the class $\Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r}}$.

Theorem 1.5 (Theorem 5.5). *Let E be a modular elliptic curve over F satisfying Assumption 5.1. For a rational prime p , if there exists a perfect pair (p, \mathfrak{r}) such that $\Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r}} \neq 0$, then we have*

$$\dim_{\mathbf{Q}_p} \mathbf{H}_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{M}(E)_p) = 1.$$

See Definition 5.3 for the meaning of perfect pairs, and also Remark 5.6.

The above theorem is closely related to the Bloch–Kato conjecture. We refer readers to the Introduction of [Liu16] for the background of this conjecture, especially how Theorem 1.5 can be compared to the seminal work of Kolyvagin [Kol90] and the parallel result [Liu16, Theorem 1.5] for another triple product case. In particular, we would like to point out that under the (conjectural) triple product version of the Gross–Zagier formula and the Beilinson–Bloch conjecture on the injectivity of the Abel–Jacobi map, the following two statements should be equivalent:

- $L'(0, M(E)) \neq 0$ (note that $L(0, M(E)) = 0$); and
- there exists some τ_0 such that for every other τ contained in τ_0 , we have $\Theta_{p,\tau} \neq 0$ as long as (p, τ) is a perfect pair.

Assuming this, then Theorem 1.5 implies that if $L'(0, M(E)) \neq 0$, that is, $\text{ord}_{s=0} L(s, M(E)) = 1$, then $\dim_{\mathbf{Q}_p} H_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, M(E)_p) = 1$ for all but finitely many p . This is certainly evidence toward the Bloch–Kato conjecture for the motive $M(E)$.

At this point, it is not clear how the arithmetic level raising, Theorem 1.3, is related to Theorem 1.5. We will briefly explain this in the next section.

1.4. Structure and strategies. There are four chapters in the main part. In short words, §2 is responsible for the basics on Shimura varieties that we will use later; §3 is responsible for Theorems 1.1 and 1.2; §4 is responsible for Theorem 1.3; and §5 is responsible for Theorem 1.5.

In §2, we study certain Shimura varieties and their integral models attached to both unitary groups of rank 2 and quaternion algebras, and compare them through Deligne’s recipe of connected Shimura varieties. The reason we have to study unitary Shimura varieties is the following: In the proof of Theorems 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3, we have to use induction process to go through certain quaternionic Shimura varieties associated to B that are *not* totally indefinite. Those Shimura varieties are not (coarse) moduli spaces but we still want to carry the information from moduli interpretation through the induction process. Therefore, we use the technique of changing Shimura data by studying closely related unitary Shimura varieties, which are of PEL-type. Such argument is coherent with [TX16] in which the authors study Goren–Oort stratification on quaternionic Shimura varieties.

In §3, we first construct candidates for the supersingular locus in Theorem 1.1 via Goren–Oort strata, which are studied in [TX16], and then prove that they exactly form the entire supersingular locus, both through an induction argument. As we mentioned previously, during the induction process, we need to compare quaternionic Shimura varieties to unitary ones. At last, we identify and prove certain properties for the superspecial locus, in some special cases.

In §4, we state and prove the arithmetic level raising result. The main argument is again through an induction process, which allows us to reduced the isomorphism in Theorem 1.3 to a similar isomorphism on certain quaternionic Shimura curves. Then we use the well-known argument of Ribet together with Ihara’s lemma in this context to establish such isomorphism on curves.

In §5, we focus on the number theoretical application of the arithmetic level raising established in the previous chapter. The basic strategy to bound the Selmer group follows the same line as in [Kol90, Liu16, Liu]. Namely, we construct a family of cohomology classes $\Theta_{p,\tau,\underline{\ell}}^\nu$ to serve as annihilators of the Selmer group after quotient by the candidate class $\Theta_{p,\tau}$ in rank 1 case. In the case considered here, those cohomology classes are indexed by an integer ν as the depth of congruence, and a pair of rational primes $\underline{\ell} = (\ell, \ell')$ that are “ p^ν -level raising primes” (see Definition 5.8 for the precise terminology and meaning). The key ideal is to connect $\Theta_{p,\tau}$ and various $\Theta_{p,\tau,\underline{\ell}}^\nu$ through some objects in the middle, that is, some mod- p^ν modular forms on certain Shimura set. Following past literature, the link between $\Theta_{p,\tau}$ and those mod- p^ν modular forms is called the *second explicit reciprocity law*; while the link between $\Theta_{p,\tau,\underline{\ell}}^\nu$ and those mod- p^ν modular forms is called the *first explicit reciprocity law*. The first law in this context has already been established by one of us in [Liu]. To establish the second law, we use Theorem 1.3; namely, we have to compute the corresponding element in the left-hand side in the isomorphism of Theorem 1.3 of the image of $\Theta_{p,\tau}$ in the right-hand side.

1.5. Notation and conventions. The following list contains basic notation and conventions we fix throughout the article. We will usually not recall them when we use, as most of them are common.

- Let Λ be an abelian group and \mathcal{S} a finite set. We denote by $\Gamma(\mathcal{S}, \Lambda)$ the abelian group of Λ -valued functions on \mathcal{S} .
- If a base is not specified in the tensor operation \otimes , then it is \mathbf{Z} . For an abelian group A , put $\widehat{A} = A \otimes (\varprojlim_n \mathbf{Z}/n)$. In particular, we have $\widehat{\mathbf{Z}} = \prod_l \mathbf{Z}_l$, where l runs over all rational primes. For a fixed rational prime p , we put $\widehat{\mathbf{Z}}^{(p)} = \prod_{l \neq p} \mathbf{Z}_l$.
- We denote by \mathbf{A} the ring of adèles over \mathbf{Q} . For a set \square of places of \mathbf{Q} , we denote by \mathbf{A}^\square the ring of adèles away from \square . For a number field F , we put $\mathbf{A}_F^\square = \mathbf{A}^\square \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} F$. If $\square = \{v_1, \dots, v_n\}$ is a finite set, we will also write $\mathbf{A}^{v_1, \dots, v_n}$ for \mathbf{A}^\square .
- For a field K , denote by K^{ac} the algebraic closure of K and put $G_K = \text{Gal}(K^{\text{ac}}/K)$. Denote by \mathbf{Q}^{ac} the algebraic closure of \mathbf{Q} in \mathbf{C} . When K is a subfield of \mathbf{Q}^{ac} , we take G_K to be $\text{Gal}(\mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}/K)$ hence a subgroup of $G_{\mathbf{Q}}$.
- For a number field K , we denote by \mathcal{O}_K the ring of integers in K . For every finite place v of \mathcal{O}_K , we denote by $\mathcal{O}_{K,v}$ the ring of integers of the completion of K at v .
- If K is a local field, then we denote by \mathcal{O}_K its ring of integers, $I_K \subseteq G_K$ the inertia subgroup. If v is a rational prime, then we simply write G_v for $G_{\mathbf{Q}_v}$ and I_v for $I_{\mathbf{Q}_v}$.
- Let K be a local field, Λ a ring, and N a $\Lambda[G_K]$ -module. We have an exact sequence of Λ -modules

$$0 \rightarrow H_{\text{unr}}^1(K, N) \rightarrow H^1(K, N) \xrightarrow{\partial} H_{\text{sing}}^1(K, N) \rightarrow 0,$$

where $H_{\text{unr}}^1(K, N)$ is the submodule of unramified classes.

- Let Λ be a ring and N a $\Lambda[G_{\mathbf{Q}}]$ -module. For each prime power v , we have the localization map $\text{loc}_v: H^1(\mathbf{Q}, N) \rightarrow H^1(\mathbf{Q}_v, N)$ of Λ -modules.
- Denote by \mathbb{P}^1 the projective line scheme over \mathbf{Z} , and $\mathbb{G}_m = \text{Spec } \mathbf{Z}[T, T^{-1}]$ the multiplicative group scheme.
- Let X be a scheme. The cohomology group $H^\bullet(X, -)$ will always be computed on the étale site of X . If X is of finite type over a subfield of \mathbf{C} , then $H^\bullet(X(\mathbf{C}), -)$ will be understood as the Betti cohomology of the associated complex analytic space $X(\mathbf{C})$.

Acknowledgements. The authors would like to thank Liang Xiao for his collaboration in some previous work with Y. T., which plays an important role in the current one. Y. L. would like to thank the hospitality of Universität Bonn during his visit to Y. T. where part of the work was done.

2. SHIMURA VARIETIES AND MODULI INTERPRETATIONS

In this chapter, we study certain Shimura varieties and their integral models attached to both unitary groups of rank 2 and quaternion algebras, and compare them through Deligne's recipe of connected Shimura varieties.

Let F be a totally real number field, and $p \geq 3$ a rational prime unramified in F . Denote by $\Sigma_\infty = \text{Hom}_{\mathbf{Q}}(F, \mathbf{C})$ the set of archimedean places of F , and Σ_p the set of p -adic places of F above p . We fix throughout §2 and §3 an isomorphism $\iota_p: \mathbf{C} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Q}_p^{\text{ac}}$. Via ι_p , we identify Σ_∞ with the set of p -adic embeddings of F via ι_p . For each $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$, we put $g_{\mathfrak{p}} = [F_{\mathfrak{p}} : \mathbf{Q}_p]$ and denote by $\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ the subset of p -adic embeddings that induce \mathfrak{p} , so that we have

$$\Sigma_\infty = \coprod_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p} \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}.$$

Since p is unramified in F , the Frobenius, denoted by σ , acts as a cyclic permutation on each $\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$.

We fix also a totally indefinite quaternion algebra B over F such that B splits at all places of F above p .

2.1. Quaternionic Shimura varieties. Let \mathbf{S} be a subset of $\Sigma_\infty \cup \Sigma_p$ of even cardinality, and put $\mathbf{S}_\infty = \mathbf{S} \cap \Sigma_\infty$. For each $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$, we put $\mathbf{S}_\mathfrak{p} = \mathbf{S} \cap (\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\})$ and $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} = \mathbf{S} \cap \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$. We suppose that $\mathbf{S}_\mathfrak{p}$ satisfies the following assumptions.

Assumption 2.1. Take $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$.

- (1) If $\mathfrak{p} \in \mathbf{S}$, then $g_\mathfrak{p}$ is odd and $\mathbf{S}_\mathfrak{p} = \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\}$.
- (2) If $\mathfrak{p} \notin \mathbf{S}$, then $\mathbf{S} \cap \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ is a disjoint union of chains of even cardinality, that is, either $\mathbf{S}_\mathfrak{p} = \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ has even cardinality or there exist $\tau_1, \dots, \tau_r \in \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ and integers $m_1, \dots, m_r \geq 1$ such that

$$(2.1.1) \quad \mathbf{S}_\mathfrak{p} = \prod_{i=1}^r \{\tau_i, \sigma^{-1}\tau_i, \dots, \sigma^{-2m_i+1}\tau_i\}$$

and $\sigma\tau_i, \sigma^{-2m_i}\tau_i \notin \mathbf{S}_\mathfrak{p}$.

Let $B_\mathbf{S}$ denote the quaternion algebra over F whose ramification set is the union of \mathbf{S} with the ramification set of B . We put $G_\mathbf{S} = \text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(B_\mathbf{S}^\times)$. For $\mathbf{S} = \emptyset$, we usually write $G = G_\emptyset$. Then $G_\mathbf{S}$ is isomorphic to G over F_v for every place $v \notin \mathbf{S}$, and we fix an isomorphism

$$G_\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p}) \cong G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p}).$$

Consider the Deligne homomorphism

$$\begin{aligned} h_\mathbf{S}: \mathbb{S}(\mathbf{R}) = \mathbf{C}^\times &\longrightarrow G_\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{R}) \cong \text{GL}_2(\mathbf{R})^{\Sigma_\infty - \mathbf{S}_\infty} \times (\mathbf{H}^\times)^{\mathbf{S}_\infty}, \\ x + \sqrt{-1}y &\longmapsto \left(\begin{pmatrix} x & y \\ -y & x \end{pmatrix}^{\Sigma_\infty - \mathbf{S}_\infty}, (x^2 + y^2)^{\mathbf{S}_\infty} \right), \end{aligned}$$

where \mathbf{H} denotes the Hamiltonian algebra over \mathbf{R} . The reflex field $F_\mathbf{S}$ of this Shimura datum is a subfield of the Galois closure of F in \mathbf{C} fixed by the stabilizer of \mathbf{S}_∞ . For instance, if $\mathbf{S}_\infty = \emptyset$, then $F_\mathbf{S} = \mathbf{Q}$. Let \wp denote the p -adic place of $F_\mathbf{S}$ via the embedding $F_\mathbf{S} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{C} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Q}_p^{\text{ac}}$.

In this article, we fix an open compact subgroup $K_\mathfrak{p} = \prod_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p} K_\mathfrak{p} \subseteq G_\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{Q}_p) = \prod_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p} (B_\mathbf{S} \otimes_F F_\mathfrak{p})^\times$, where

- $K_\mathfrak{p}$ is a hyperspecial subgroup if $\mathfrak{p} \notin \mathbf{S}$, and
- $K_\mathfrak{p} = \mathcal{O}_{B_\mathfrak{p}}^\times$ is the unique maximal open compact subgroup of $(B_\mathbf{S} \otimes_F F_\mathfrak{p})^\times$ if $\mathfrak{p} \in \mathbf{S}$.

For a sufficiently small open compact subgroup $K^p \subseteq G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p}) \cong G_\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$, we have the Shimura variety $\text{Sh}(G_\mathbf{S}, K^p)$ defined over $F_\mathbf{S}$ whose \mathbf{C} -points are given by

$$\text{Sh}(G_\mathbf{S}, K^p)(\mathbf{C}) = G_\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{Q}) \backslash (\mathfrak{H}^\pm)^{\Sigma_\infty - \mathbf{S}_\infty} \times G_\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{A}^\infty) / K^p K_\mathfrak{p}$$

where $K = K^p K_\mathfrak{p} \subseteq G(\mathbf{A}^\infty)$, and $\mathfrak{H}^\pm = \mathbb{P}^1(\mathbf{C}) - \mathbb{P}^1(\mathbf{R})$ is the union of upper and lower half-planes.

We put $\text{Sh}(G_\mathbf{S}) = \varprojlim_{K^p} \text{Sh}(G_\mathbf{S}, K^p)$. Let $\text{Sh}(G_\mathbf{S})^\circ$ be the neutral geometric connected component of $\text{Sh}(G_\mathbf{S}) \otimes_{F_\mathbf{S}} \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}$, that is, the one containing the image of $(i^{\Sigma_\infty - \mathbf{S}_\infty}, 1) \in (\mathfrak{H}^\pm)^{\Sigma_\infty - \mathbf{S}_\infty} \times G_\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{A}^\infty)$. Then $\text{Sh}(G_\mathbf{S})^\circ \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \iota_p} \mathbf{Q}_p^{\text{ac}}$ descends to \mathbf{Q}_p^{ur} , the maximal unramified extension of \mathbf{Q}_p in \mathbf{Q}_p^{ac} . Moreover, by Deligne's construction [Del79], $\text{Sh}_{K_\mathfrak{p}}(G_\mathbf{S})$ can be recovered from the connected Shimura variety $\text{Sh}(G_\mathbf{S})^\circ$ together with its Galois and Hecke actions (see [TX16, 2.11] for details in our particular case).

2.2. An auxiliary CM extension. Choose a CM extension E/F such that

- E/F is inert at every ramified place of B ,
- For $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$, E/F is split (resp. inert) at \mathfrak{p} if $g_\mathfrak{p}$ is even (resp. if $g_\mathfrak{p}$ is odd).

Let $\Sigma_{E,\infty}$ denote the set of complex embeddings of E , identified also with the set of p -embedding of E by composing with ι_p . For $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}$, we denote by $\tilde{\tau}^c$ the image of $\tilde{\tau}$ by the complex conjugation of E/F . For $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$, we denote by $\Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ the subset of p -adic embeddings of E

inducing \mathfrak{p} . Similarly, for a p -adic place \mathfrak{q} of E , we have the subset $\Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{q}} \subseteq \Sigma_{E,\infty}$ consisting of p -adic embeddings that induce \mathfrak{q} . Consider a subset $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\infty \subseteq \Sigma_\infty$ satisfying the following assumptions.

Assumption 2.2. We have

- (1) For each $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$, the natural map $\Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \rightarrow \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ induces a bijection $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$, where $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} = \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\infty \cap \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$.
- (2) For each p -adic place \mathfrak{q} of E above a p -adic place \mathfrak{p} of F , the cardinality of $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\infty/\mathfrak{q}}$ is half of the cardinality of the preimage of $\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ in $\Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{q}}$.

For instance, if \mathfrak{p} splits in E into two places \mathfrak{q} and \mathfrak{q}^c and $\mathfrak{S}_\mathfrak{p}$ is given by (2.1.1), then the subset

$$\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} = \prod_{i=1}^r \{\tilde{\tau}_i, \sigma^{-1}\tilde{\tau}_i^c, \dots, \sigma^{-2m_i+2}\tilde{\tau}_i, \sigma^{-2m_i+1}\tilde{\tau}_i^c\}$$

satisfies the requirement. Here, $\tilde{\tau}_i \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ denotes the lift of τ_i inducing the p -adic place \mathfrak{q} . The choice of such $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\infty$ determines a collection of numbers $s_{\tilde{\tau}} \in \{0, 1, 2\}$ for $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}$ by the following rules:

$$s_{\tilde{\tau}} = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } \tilde{\tau} \in \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\infty, \\ 2 & \text{if } \tilde{\tau}^c \in \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\infty, \\ 1 & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Our assumption on $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\infty$ implies that, for every prime \mathfrak{q} of E above p , the set $\{\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{q}} \mid s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 0\}$ has the same cardinality as $\{\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{q}} \mid s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 2\}$.

Put $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}} = (\mathfrak{S}, \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\infty)$, and $T_{E,\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}} = \text{Res}_{E/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathbb{G}_{m,E})$. Here, the subscript $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}$ emphasizes that we are taking the following Deligne homomorphism

$$\begin{aligned} h_{E,\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}: \mathfrak{S}(\mathbf{R}) = \mathbf{C}^\times &\longrightarrow T_{E,\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathbf{R}) = \prod_{\tau \in \Sigma_\infty} (E \otimes_{\tau,F} \mathbf{R})^\times \cong (\mathbf{C}^\times)^{\mathfrak{S}_\infty} \times (\mathbf{C}^\times)^{\Sigma_\infty - \mathfrak{S}_\infty} \\ z &\longmapsto \left((z^{-1}, \dots, z^{-1}), (1, \dots, 1) \right), \end{aligned}$$

where, for each $\tau \in \mathfrak{S}_\infty$, we identify $E \otimes_{\tau,F} \mathbf{R}$ with \mathbf{C} via the embedding $\tilde{\tau}: E \hookrightarrow \mathbf{C}$ with $\tilde{\tau} \in \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\infty$. We put $K_{E,p} = (\mathcal{O}_E \otimes \mathbf{Z}_p)^\times \subseteq T_{E,\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathbf{Q}_p)$, the unique maximal open compact subgroup of $T_{E,\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathbf{Q}_p)$.

2.3. Unitary Shimura varieties. Put $T_F = \text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathbb{G}_{m,F})$. Then the reduced norm on $B_\mathfrak{S}$ induces a morphism of \mathbf{Q} -algebraic groups

$$\nu_\mathfrak{S}: G_\mathfrak{S} \rightarrow T_F.$$

Note that the center of $G_\mathfrak{S}$ is isomorphic to T_F . Let $G''_\mathfrak{S}$ denote the quotient of $G_\mathfrak{S} \times T_{E,\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}$ by T_F via the embedding

$$T_F \hookrightarrow G_\mathfrak{S} \times T_{E,\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}, \quad z \mapsto (z, z^{-1}),$$

and let $G'_\mathfrak{S}$ be the inverse image of $\mathbb{G}_m \subseteq T_F$ under the norm map

$$\text{Nm}: G''_\mathfrak{S} = (G_\mathfrak{S} \times T_{E,\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}})/T_F \rightarrow T_F, \quad (g, t) \mapsto \nu_\mathfrak{S}(g) \text{Nm}_{E/F}(t).$$

Let $h''_\mathfrak{S}: \mathbf{C}^\times \rightarrow G''_\mathfrak{S}(\mathbf{R})$ be the Deligne homomorphism induced by $h_\mathfrak{S} \times h_{E,\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}$. The image of $h''_\mathfrak{S}$ lies in $G'_\mathfrak{S}(\mathbf{R})$, and we denote by $h'_\mathfrak{S}: \mathbf{C}^\times \rightarrow G'_\mathfrak{S}(\mathbf{R})$ the induced map.

As for the quaternionic case, we fix the level at p of the Shimura varieties for $G''_\mathfrak{S}$ and $G'_\mathfrak{S}$ as follows. Let $K''_p \subseteq G''_\mathfrak{S}(\mathbf{Q}_p)$ be the image of $K_p \times K_{E,p}$, and put $K'_p = K''_p \cap G'_\mathfrak{S}(\mathbf{Q}_p)$. Note that K''_p (resp. K'_p) is not a maximal open compact subgroup of $G''_\mathfrak{S}(\mathbf{Q}_p)$ (resp. $G'_\mathfrak{S}(\mathbf{Q}_p)$), if \mathfrak{S} contains some p -adic

place $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$. For sufficiently open compact subgroups $K''^p \subseteq G''_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$ and $K'^p \subseteq G'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$, we get Shimura varieties with \mathbf{C} -points given by

$$\begin{aligned} \mathrm{Sh}(G''_{\mathfrak{S}}, K''^p)(\mathbf{C}) &= G''_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{Q}) \backslash (\mathfrak{H}^{\pm})^{\Sigma_{\infty} - \mathfrak{S}_{\infty}} \times G''_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty}) / K''^p K'_p, \\ \mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)(\mathbf{C}) &= G'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{Q}) \backslash (\mathfrak{H}^{\pm})^{\Sigma_{\infty} - \mathfrak{S}_{\infty}} \times G'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty}) / K'^p K'_p. \end{aligned}$$

We put

$$\mathrm{Sh}(G''_{\mathfrak{S}}) = \varprojlim_{K''^p} \mathrm{Sh}(G'', K''^p), \quad \mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}) = \varprojlim_{K'^p} \mathrm{Sh}(G', K'^p).$$

The common reflex field $E_{\mathfrak{S}}$ of $\mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}})$ and $\mathrm{Sh}(G''_{\mathfrak{S}})$ is a subfield of the Galois closure of E in \mathbf{C} . The isomorphism $\iota_p: \mathbf{C} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Q}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}$ defines a p -adic embedding of $E_{\mathfrak{S}} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Q}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}$, and hence a p -adic place $\tilde{\varphi}$ of $E_{\mathfrak{S}}$. Then $E_{\mathfrak{S}}$ is unramified at $\tilde{\varphi}$. Let $\mathrm{Sh}(G''_{\mathfrak{S}})^{\circ}$ (resp. $\mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}})^{\circ}$) denote the neutral geometric connected component of $\mathrm{Sh}(G''_{\mathfrak{S}}) \otimes_{E_{\mathfrak{S}}} \mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}$ (resp. $\mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}) \otimes_{E_{\mathfrak{S}}} \mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}$). Then both $\mathrm{Sh}(G''_{\mathfrak{S}})^{\circ} \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}, \iota_p}} \mathbf{Q}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}$ and $\mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}})^{\circ} \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}, \iota_p}} \mathbf{Q}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}$ can be descended to $\mathbf{Q}_p^{\mathrm{ur}}$.

In summary, we have a diagram of morphisms of algebraic groups

$$G_{\mathfrak{S}} \leftarrow G_{\mathfrak{S}} \times T_{E, \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}} \rightarrow G''_{\mathfrak{S}} = (G_{\mathfrak{S}} \times T_{E, \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}) / T_F \leftarrow G'_{\mathfrak{S}}$$

compatible with Deligne homomorphisms, such that the induced morphisms on the derived and adjoint groups are isomorphisms. By Deligne's theory of connected Shimura varieties (see [TX16, Corollary 2.17]), such a diagram induces canonical isomorphisms between the neutral geometric connected components of the associated Shimura varieties:

$$(2.3.1) \quad \mathrm{Sh}(G_{\mathfrak{S}})^{\circ} \xleftarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Sh}(G''_{\mathfrak{S}})^{\circ} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}})^{\circ}.$$

Since a Shimura variety can be recovered from its neutral connected component together with its Hecke and Galois action, one can transfer integral models of $\mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}})$ to integral models of $\mathrm{Sh}(G_{\mathfrak{S}})$ (see [TX16, Corollary 2.17]).

2.4. Moduli interpretation for unitary Shimura varieties. Note that $\mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)$ is a Shimura variety of PEL-type. To simplify notation, let $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}$ be the ring of integers of the completion of $E_{\mathfrak{S}}$ at $\tilde{\varphi}$. We recall the integral model of $\mathrm{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)$ over $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}$ defined in [TX16] as follows.

Let $K'^p \subseteq G'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$ be an open compact subgroup such that $K'^p K'_p$ is neat (for PEL-type Shimura data). We put $D_{\mathfrak{S}} = B_{\mathfrak{S}} \otimes_F E$, which is isomorphic to $\mathrm{Mat}_2(E)$ by assumption on E . Denote by $b \mapsto \bar{b}$ the involution on $D_{\mathfrak{S}}$ given by the product of the canonical involution on $B_{\mathfrak{S}}$ and the complex conjugation on E/F . Write $E = F(\sqrt{\mathfrak{d}})$ for some totally negative element $\mathfrak{d} \in F$ that is a \mathfrak{p} -adic unit for every $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$. We choose also an element $\delta \in D_{\mathfrak{S}}^{\times}$ such that $\bar{\delta} = \delta$ as in [TX16, Lemma 3.8]. Then the conjugation by δ^{-1} defines a new involution $b \mapsto b^* = \delta^{-1} \bar{b} \delta$. Consider $W = D_{\mathfrak{S}}$ as a free left $D_{\mathfrak{S}}$ -module of rank 1, equipped with an $*$ -hermitian alternating pairing

$$(2.4.1) \quad \psi: W \times W \rightarrow \mathbf{Q}, \quad \psi(x, y) = \mathrm{Tr}_{E/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathrm{Tr}_{D_{\mathfrak{S}}/E}^{\circ}(\sqrt{\mathfrak{d}} x \bar{y} \delta)),$$

where $\mathrm{Tr}_{D_{\mathfrak{S}}/E}^{\circ}$ denotes the reduced trace of $D_{\mathfrak{S}}/E$. Then $G'_{\mathfrak{S}}$ can be identified with the unitary similitude group of (W, ψ) .

We choose an order $\mathcal{O}_{D_{\mathfrak{S}}} \subseteq D_{\mathfrak{S}}$ that is stable under $*$ and maximal at p , and an $\mathcal{O}_{D_{\mathfrak{S}}}$ -lattice $L \subseteq W$ such that $\psi(L, L) \subseteq \mathbf{Z}$ and $L \otimes \mathbf{Z}_p$ is self-dual under ψ . Assume that K'^p is a sufficiently small open compact subgroup of $G'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$ which stabilizes $L \otimes \hat{\mathbf{Z}}^{(p)}$.

Consider the moduli problem $\underline{\mathrm{Sh}}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)$ that associates to each locally noetherian $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}$ -scheme S the set of isomorphism classes of tuples $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K'^p})$, where

- A is an abelian scheme over S of dimension $4[F : \mathbf{Q}]$;

- $\iota: \mathcal{O}_{D_S} \hookrightarrow \text{End}_S(A)$ is an embedding such that the induced action of $\iota(b)$ for $b \in \mathcal{O}_E$ on $\text{Lie}(A/S)$ has characteristic polynomial

$$\det(T - \iota(b)|\text{Lie}(A/S)) = \prod_{\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}} (x - \tilde{\tau}(b))^{2s_{\tilde{\tau}}};$$

- $\lambda: A \rightarrow A^\vee$ is a polarization of A such that
 - the Rosati involution defined by λ on $\text{End}_S(A)$ induces the involution $b \mapsto b^*$ on \mathcal{O}_{D_S} ,
 - if $\mathfrak{p} \notin \mathbf{S}$, λ induces an isomorphism of p -divisible groups $A[\mathfrak{p}^\infty] \xrightarrow{\sim} A^\vee[\mathfrak{p}^\infty]$, and
 - if $\mathfrak{p} \in \mathbf{S}$, then $(\ker \lambda)[\mathfrak{p}^\infty]$ is a finite flat group scheme contained in $A[\mathfrak{p}]$ of rank $p^{4g_{\mathfrak{p}}}$ and the cokernel of induced morphism $\lambda_*: H_1^{\text{dR}}(A/S) \rightarrow H_1^{\text{dR}}(A^\vee/S)$ is a locally free module of rank two over $\mathcal{O}_S \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}_p} \mathcal{O}_E/\mathfrak{p}$. Here, $H_1^{\text{dR}}(-/S)$ denotes the relative de Rham homology;
- $\bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$ is a K^p level structure on A , that is, a K^p -orbit of \mathcal{O}_{D_S} -linear isomorphisms of étale sheaves $\alpha: L \otimes \widehat{\mathbf{Z}}^{(p)} \xrightarrow{\sim} \widehat{T}^p(A)$ such that the alternating pairing $\psi: L \otimes \widehat{\mathbf{Z}}^{(p)} \times L \otimes \widehat{\mathbf{Z}}^{(p)} \rightarrow \widehat{\mathbf{Z}}^{(p)}$ is compatible with the λ -Weil pairing on $\widehat{T}^p(A)$ via some isomorphism $\widehat{\mathbf{Z}}^{(p)} \cong \widehat{\mathbf{Z}}^{(p)}(1)$. Here, $\widehat{T}^p(A) = \prod_{l \neq p} T_l(A)$ denotes the product of prime-to- p Tate modules.

Remark 2.3. Sometimes it is convenient to formulate the moduli problem $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_S, K^p)$ in terms of isogeny classes of abelian varieties: one associates to each locally noetherian $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}$ -scheme S the equivalence classes of tuples $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}^{\text{rat}})$, where

- (A, ι) is an abelian scheme *up to prime-to- p isogenies* of dimension $4[F: \mathbf{Q}]$ equipped with an action \mathcal{O}_{D_S} satisfying the determinant conditions as above;
- λ is a polarization on A satisfying the condition as above;
- $\bar{\alpha}_{K^p}^{\text{rat}}$ is a rational K^p -level structure on A , that is, a K^p -orbit of $\mathcal{O}_{D_S} \otimes \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p}$ -linear isomorphisms of étale sheaves on S :

$$\alpha: W \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p} \xrightarrow{\sim} \widehat{V}^p(A) := \widehat{T}^p(A) \otimes \mathbf{Q}$$

such that the pairing ψ on $W \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p}$ is compatible with the λ -Weil pairing on $\widehat{V}^p(A)$ up to a scalar in $\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p,\times}$.

For the equivalence of these two definitions, see [Lan13].

Theorem 2.4 ([TX16, 3.14, 3.19]). *The moduli problem $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_S, K^p)$ is representable by a quasi-projective and smooth scheme $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_S, K^p)$ over $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}$ such that*

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G'_S, K^p) \times_{\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}} E_{\tilde{S}, \tilde{\varphi}} \cong \text{Sh}(G'_S, K^p) \times_{E_{\tilde{S}}} E_{\tilde{S}, \tilde{\varphi}}.$$

Moreover, the projective limit $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_S) := \varprojlim_{K^p} \mathbf{Sh}(G'_S, K^p)$ is an integral canonical model of $\text{Sh}(G'_S)$ over $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}$ in the sense that $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_S)$ satisfies the following extension property over $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}$: if S is a smooth scheme over $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}$, any morphism $S \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}} E_{\tilde{S}, \tilde{\varphi}} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_S)$ extends uniquely to a morphism $S \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_S)$.

Let \mathbf{Z}_p^{ur} be the ring of integers of \mathbf{Q}_p^{ur} . The closure of $\text{Sh}(G'_S)^\circ$ in $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_S) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\varphi}}} \mathbf{Z}_p^{\text{ur}}$, denote by $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_S)^\circ_{\mathbf{Z}_p^{\text{ur}}}$, is a smooth integral canonical model of $\text{Sh}(G'_S)^\circ$ over \mathbf{Z}_p^{ur} . By (2.3.1), this can also be regarded as an integral canonical model of $\text{Sh}(G_S)^\circ$ over \mathbf{Z}_p^{ur} . This induces a smooth integral canonical model $\mathbf{Sh}(G_S)$ of $\text{Sh}(G_S)$ over $\mathcal{O}_{F_S, \tilde{\varphi}}$ by Deligne's recipe (See [TX16, Corollary 2.17]). For any open compact subgroup $K^p \subseteq G_S(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$, we define $\mathbf{Sh}(G_S, K^p)$ as the quotient of $\mathbf{Sh}(G_S)$ by K^p . Then if K^p is sufficiently small, $\mathbf{Sh}(G_S, K^p)$ is a quasi-projective smooth scheme over $\mathcal{O}_{F_S, \tilde{\varphi}}$, and it is an integral model for $\text{Sh}(G_S, K^p)$.

2.5. Moduli interpretation for totally indefinite quaternionic Shimura varieties. When $S = \emptyset$, the Shimura variety $\text{Sh}(G, K^p)$ has another moduli interpretation in terms of abelian varieties with real multiplication by \mathcal{O}_B . Using this moduli interpretation, one can also construct another integral model of $\text{Sh}(G, K^p)$ over $\mathcal{O}_{F_S, \wp}$. The aim of this part is to compare this integral canonical model of $\text{Sh}(G, K^p)$ with $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ constructed using unitary Shimura varieties as defined above.

We choose an element $\gamma \in B^\times$ such that

- $\bar{\gamma} = -\gamma$;
- $b \mapsto b^* := \gamma^{-1}\bar{b}\gamma$ is a positive involution;
- $\nu(\gamma)$ is a \mathfrak{p} -adic unit for every p -adic place \mathfrak{p} of F , where $\nu: B^\times \rightarrow F^\times$ is the reduced norm map.

Put $V = B$ viewed as a free left B -module of rank 1, and consider the alternating pairing

$$\langle _, _ \rangle_F: V \times V \rightarrow F, \quad \langle x, y \rangle_F = \text{Tr}_{B/F}^\circ(x\bar{y}\gamma),$$

where $\text{Tr}_{B/F}^\circ$ is the reduced trace of B . Note that $\langle bx, y \rangle_F = \langle x, b^*y \rangle_F$ for $x, y \in V$ and $b \in B$. We let $G = B^\times$ act on V via $g \cdot v = vg^{-1}$ for $g \in G$ and $v \in V$. Then one has an isomorphism

$$G \cong \text{Aut}_B(V).$$

Fix an order $\mathcal{O}_B \subseteq B$ such that

- \mathcal{O}_B contains \mathcal{O}_F , and it is stable under $*$;
- $\mathcal{O}_B \otimes \mathbf{Z}_p$ is a maximal order of $B \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{Q}_p \cong \text{GL}_2(F \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{Q}_p)$.

Let $K^p \subseteq G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p})$ be an open compact subgroup. Consider the moduli problem $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ that associates to every $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$ -scheme T the equivalence classes of tuples $(A, \iota, \bar{\lambda}, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$ where

- A is a projective abelian scheme over T up to prime-to- p isogenies;
- ι is a real multiplication by \mathcal{O}_B on A , that is, a ring homomorphism $\iota: \mathcal{O}_B \rightarrow \text{End}(A)$ such that

$$\det(T - \iota(b)|\text{Lie}(A)) = N_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(\text{N}_{B/F}^\circ(T - b)), \quad b \in \mathcal{O}_B,$$

where $\text{N}_{B/F}^\circ$ is the reduced norm of B/F ;

- $\bar{\lambda}$ is an $F_+^{p, \times}$ -orbit of \mathcal{O}_F -linear prime-to- p polarizations $\lambda: A \rightarrow A^\vee$ such that $\iota(b)^\vee \circ \lambda = \lambda \circ \iota(b^*)$ for all $b \in \mathcal{O}_B$, where $F_+^{p, \times} \subseteq F^\times$ is the subgroup of totally positive elements that are \mathfrak{p} -adic units for all $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$;
- $\bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$ is a K^p -level structure on (A, ι) , that is, $\bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$ is a K^p -orbit of $B \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty, p}$ -linear isomorphisms of étale sheaves on T :

$$\alpha: V \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty, p} \xrightarrow{\sim} \widehat{V}^p(A).$$

Remark 2.5. By [Zin82, Lemma 3.8], there exists exactly one $F_+^{p, \times}$ orbit of prime-to- p polarizations on A that induces the given positive involution $*$ on B . Hence, one may omit $\bar{\lambda}$ from the definition of the moduli problem $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$. This is the point of view in [Liu]. Here, we choose to keep $\bar{\lambda}$ in order to compare it with unitary Shimura varieties.

By [Zin82, page 27], one has a bijection

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)(\mathbf{C}) \cong G(\mathbf{Q}) \backslash (\mathfrak{H}^\pm)^{\Sigma_\infty} \times G(\mathbf{A}^\infty) / K^p K_p = \text{Sh}(G, K^p)(\mathbf{C}).$$

Note that an object $(A, \iota, \bar{\lambda}, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}) \in \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)(T)$ admits automorphisms $\mathcal{O}_F^\times \cap K^p$, which is always non-trivial if $F \neq \mathbf{Q}$. Here, \mathcal{O}_F^\times is considered as a subgroup of $G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p})$ via the diagonal embedding. Thus, the moduli problem $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ can not be representable. However, Zink shows in [Zin82, Satz 1.7] that $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ admits a coarse moduli space $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$, which is a projective scheme over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$. This gives an integral model of the Shimura variety $\text{Sh}(G, K^p)$ over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$.

We recall briefly Zink's construction of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$. Take $(A, \iota, \bar{\lambda}, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}) \in \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)(T)$ for some $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$ -scheme T . Choose a polarization $\lambda \in \bar{\lambda}$, and an isomorphism $\alpha \in \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$. Then λ induces a Weil pairing

$$\widehat{\Psi}^\lambda: \widehat{V}^p(A) \times \widehat{V}^p(A) \rightarrow \mathbf{A}^{\infty, p}(1),$$

and there exists a unique F -linear alternating pairing

$$\widehat{\Psi}_F^\lambda: \widehat{V}^p(A) \times \widehat{V}^p(A) \rightarrow \mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, p}(1)$$

such that $\widehat{\Psi}^\lambda = \mathrm{Tr}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} \circ \widehat{\Psi}_F^\lambda$. We fix an isomorphism $\mathbf{Z} \cong \mathbf{Z}(1)$, and view $\langle _, _ \rangle$ as a pairing with values in $F(1)$. Then by [Zin82, 1.2], there exists an element $c \in \mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, p, \times}$ such that

$$\widehat{\Psi}_F^\lambda(\alpha(x), \alpha(y)) = c \langle x, y \rangle_F, \quad x, y \in V \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty, p}.$$

The class of c in $\mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, p, \times} / \nu(K^p)$, denoted by $c(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$, is independent of the choice of $\alpha \in \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$. If $F_+^\times \subseteq F^\times$ is the subgroup of totally positive elements, then the image of $c(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$ in

$$\mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, p, \times} / F_+^{p, \times} \nu(K^p) \cong \mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, \times} / F_+^\times \nu(K)$$

is independent of the choices of both λ and α .

We choose representatives $c_1, \dots, c_r \in \mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, p, \times} / \nu(K^p)$ of the finite quotient $\mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, p, \times} / F_+^{p, \times} \nu(K^p)$, and consider the moduli problem $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$ that associates to every \mathbf{Z}_p -scheme T equivalence classes of tuple $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$, where

- (A, ι) is an abelian scheme over T up to prime-to- p isogenies equipped with real multiplication by \mathcal{O}_B ;
- $\lambda: A \rightarrow A^\vee$ is a prime-to- p polarization such that $\iota(b)^\vee \circ \lambda = \lambda \circ \iota(b^*)$ for all $b \in \mathcal{O}_B$;
- $\bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$ is a K^p -level structure on A such that $c(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}) = c_i$ for some $i = 1, \dots, r$.

To study the representability of $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$, we need the following notion of neat subgroups.

Definition 2.6. Let \mathbf{R} be the ramification set of B . For every $g_v \in (B \otimes_F F_v)^\times$ with $v \notin \mathbf{R}$, let Γ_{g_v} denote the subgroup of $F_v^{\mathrm{ac}, \times}$ generated by the eigenvalues of g_v . Choose an embedding $\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}} \hookrightarrow F_v^{\mathrm{ac}}$. Then $(\Gamma_{g_v} \cap \mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}})^{\mathrm{tor}}$ is the subgroup of Γ_{g_v} consisting of roots of unity, and is independent of the embedding $\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}} \hookrightarrow F_v^{\mathrm{ac}}$.

Let \square be a finite set of places of \mathbf{Q} containing $\{\infty\}$ and \square_F the set of places of F above \square . We say that an element $g \in G(\mathbf{A}^\square) = (B \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^\square)^\times$ is *neat* if $\bigcap_{v \in \square_F - \mathbf{R}} (\Gamma_{g_v} \cap \mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}})^{\mathrm{tor}} = \{1\}$. We say that a subgroup $U \subseteq G(\mathbf{A}^\square)$ is *neat* if every element $g = g^{\mathbf{R}} g_{\mathbf{R}} \in U$ with $\nu(g^{\mathbf{R}}) = 1$ is neat. Here, $g^{\mathbf{R}} \in (B \otimes_F \mathbf{A}_F^{\square_F \cup \mathbf{R}})^\times$ (resp. $g_{\mathbf{R}} \in \prod_{v \in \mathbf{R} - \square_F} (B \otimes_F F_v)^\times$) is the prime-to- \mathbf{R} component (resp. \mathbf{R} -component) of g .

Assume from now on that $K^p \subseteq G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p})$ is neat. It is easy to see that each object of $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$ has no non-trivial automorphisms. By a well-known result of Mumford, $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ is representable by a quasi-projective smooth scheme $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$ over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$. If B is a division algebra, then $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ is even projective over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$ (see [Zin82, Lemma 1.8]).

Let $\mathcal{O}_{F,+}^\times$ be the group of totally positive units of F . There is a natural action by $\mathcal{O}_{F,+}^\times \cap \nu(K^p)$ on $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$ given by $\xi \cdot (A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}) = (A, \iota, \xi \cdot \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$ for $\xi \in \mathcal{O}_{F,+}^\times$, and the quotient is the moduli problem $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$. Note that the subgroup $(\mathcal{O}_F^\times \cap K^p)^2$ acts trivially on $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$. Indeed, if $\xi = \eta^2$ with $\eta \in \mathcal{O}_F^\times \cap K^p$, then the multiplication by η on A defines an isomorphism $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}) \xrightarrow{\sim} (A, \iota, \xi \cdot \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$. Put

$$\Delta_{K^p} := (\mathcal{O}_{F,+}^\times \cap \nu(K^p)) / (\mathcal{O}_F^\times \cap K^p)^2.$$

Lemma 2.7. *Assume that K^p is neat. Let $(A, \iota, \bar{\lambda}, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$ be a T -valued point of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$. Then the group of automorphisms of $(A, \iota, \bar{\lambda}, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$ is $\mathcal{O}_F^\times \cap K^p$. Here, \mathcal{O}_F^\times is viewed as a subgroup of $G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p})$ via the diagonal embedding.*

Proof. This is a slight generalization of [Zin82, Korollar 3.3]. Take $\eta \in \text{End}_{\mathcal{O}_B}(A)_{\mathbf{Q}}$ that preserves $\bar{\lambda}$ and $\bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$. Then there exists $\xi \in F_+^{\times}$ such that $\eta\hat{\eta} = \xi$, where $\hat{\eta}$ is the Rosati involution of η induced by $\bar{\lambda}$. By [Zin82, Satz 3.2], it is enough to show that $\hat{\eta} = \eta$. Choose $\alpha \in \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$, which induces an embedding

$$(\text{End}_{\mathcal{O}_B}(A) \otimes \mathbf{Q})^{\times} \rightarrow (\text{End}_B(V) \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})^{\times} \cong G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p}).$$

Then the image of η under this embedding lies in K^p . Consider the endomorphism $\eta^2\xi^{-1} \in \text{End}_{\mathcal{O}_B}(A) \otimes \mathbf{Q}$. Its image in $G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$ lies in K^p and has reduced norm equal to 1. Since K^p is neat, all the eigenvalues of $\eta^2\xi^{-1}$ are 1. So $\eta^2\xi^{-1}$ must be trivial, and hence $\eta = \hat{\eta}$. \square

Corollary 2.8. *Assume that K^p is neat. Then the action of Δ_{K^p} on $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$ is free.*

Proof. The same argument as [Zin82, Korollar 3.4] works. \square

We define

$$(2.5.1) \quad \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p) := \widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p) / \Delta_{K^p},$$

which exists as a quasi-projective smooth over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$ by [SGA1, Exposé VIII, Corollaire 7.7]. Then $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ is the coarse moduli space of the moduli problem $\underline{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$, and $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$ is a finite étale cover of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ with Galois group Δ_{K^p} . For each $i = 1, \dots, r$, we denote by $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{c_i}(G, K^p)$ the subscheme of $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$ consisting the tuples $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$ with $c(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}) = c_i$. It is clear that each $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{c_i}(G, K^p)$ is stable under the action of Δ_{K^p} . Let $\mathbf{Sh}^{c_i}(G, K^p) \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ be the image of $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{c_i}(G, K^p)$ under the morphism (2.5.1). Note that each $\mathbf{Sh}^{c_i}(G, K^p)$ is not necessarily defined over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$. Actually, using the strong approximation theorem, one sees easily that $\mathbf{Sh}^{c_i}(G, K^p)(\mathbf{C})$ is a connected component of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)(\mathbf{C})$.

Remark 2.9. Assume that K^p is neat.

- (1) Let $(\tilde{\mathcal{A}}, \tilde{\iota})$ be the universal abelian scheme with real multiplication by \mathcal{O}_B over $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$. Then $\tilde{\mathcal{A}}$ is equipped with a natural descent data relative to the projection $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$, since the action of Δ_{K^p} modifies only the polarization. By [SGA1, Exposé VI-II, Corollaire 7.7], the descent data on $\tilde{\mathcal{A}}$ is effective. This means that, even though $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ is not a fine moduli space, there exists still a universal family \mathcal{A} over $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$. Moreover, by étale descent, $\tilde{\iota}$ descends to a real multiplication ι by \mathcal{O}_B on the universal family \mathcal{A} over $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$.
- (2) In general, Δ_{K^p} is non-trivial. However, for any open compact subgroup $K^p \subseteq G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$, there exists a smaller open compact subgroup $K'^p \subseteq K^p$ such that $\Delta_{K'^p}$ is trivial.

We give an interpretation of $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$ in terms of Shimura varieties. Let $G^{\star} \subseteq G$ be the preimage of $\mathbb{G}_{m, \mathbf{Q}} \subseteq T_F = \text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathbb{G}_{m, F})$ via the reduced norm map $\nu: G \rightarrow T_F$. The Deligne homomorphism $h_{\emptyset}: \mathbb{S}(\mathbf{R}) = \mathbf{C}^{\times} \rightarrow G(\mathbf{R})$ factors through $G^{\star}(\mathbf{R})$, hence induces a map

$$h_{G^{\star}}: \mathbb{S}(\mathbf{R}) \rightarrow G^{\star}(\mathbf{R}).$$

We put $K_p^{\star} = G^{\star}(\mathbf{Q}_p) \cap K_p$, which will be the fixed level at p for Shimura varieties attached to G^{\star} . For a sufficiently small open compact subgroup $K^{\star p} \subseteq G^{\star}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$, we have the associated Shimura variety $\text{Sh}(G^{\star}, K^{\star p})$ defined over \mathbf{Q} , whose \mathbf{C} -points are given by

$$\text{Sh}(G^{\star}, K^{\star p})(\mathbf{C}) = G^{\star}(\mathbf{Q}) \backslash ((\mathfrak{H}^{\pm})^{\Sigma_{\infty}} \times G^{\star}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty}) / K^{\star p} K_p^{\star}).$$

Put $\text{Sh}(G^{\star}) = \varprojlim_{K^{\star p}} \text{Sh}(G^{\star}, K^{\star p})$ as usual.

There is a natural action of $\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p,\times}$ on $\mathbf{A}_F^{\infty,p,\times} / F_+^{p,\times} \nu(K^p)$ by multiplication. Let $\mathbf{c}_1, \dots, \mathbf{c}_h$ denote the equivalence classes modulo $F_+^{p,\times} \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p,\times}$ of the chosen set $\{c_1, \dots, c_r\} \subseteq \mathbf{A}_F^{\infty,p,\times} / \nu(K^p)$.

We may and do assume that all the c_i 's in one equivalence class differ from each other by elements in $\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p,\times}$. For each $\mathfrak{c} \in \{\mathfrak{c}_1, \dots, \mathfrak{c}_h\}$, we put

$$\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K^p) := \coprod_{c_i \in \mathfrak{c}} \widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{c_i}(G, K^p)$$

and similarly $\mathbf{Sh}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K^p) = \coprod_{c_i \in \mathfrak{c}} \mathbf{Sh}^{c_i}(G, K^p)$.

Proposition 2.10. *Suppose that $K^p \subseteq G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$ is a neat open compact subgroup. For every $\mathfrak{c} \in \{\mathfrak{c}_1, \dots, \mathfrak{c}_h\}$, there exists an element $g^p \in G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$ such that if $K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{*,p} := G^* \cap g^p K^p g^{p,-1}$, then we have an isomorphism of algebraic varieties over \mathbf{Q}*

$$\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K^p) \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}} \mathbf{Q} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathrm{Sh}(G^*, K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{*,p}).$$

Proof. Let $X \cong (\mathfrak{H}^{\pm})^{\Sigma_{\infty}}$ denote the set of conjugacy classes of $h_{G^*} : \mathbb{S}(\mathbf{R}) \rightarrow G^*(\mathbf{R})$. We fix a base point $(A_0, \iota_0, \lambda_0, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p,0}) \in \widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K^p)(\mathbf{C})$. Put $V_{\mathbf{Q}}(A_0) := H_1(A_0(\mathbf{C}), \mathbf{Q})$. We fix an isomorphism $\eta_0 : V_{\mathbf{Q}}(A_0) \xrightarrow{\sim} V$ of left B -modules and a choice of $\alpha_0 \in \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$. Then the composite map

$$(\eta_0 \otimes 1) \circ \alpha_0 : V \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p} \rightarrow \widehat{V}^p(A_0) \cong V_{\mathbf{Q}}(A_0) \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p} \rightarrow V \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p}$$

defines an element $g^p \in G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$. Now let $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}) \in \widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K^p)(\mathbf{C})$ be another point. There exists also an isomorphism $\eta : V_{\mathbf{Q}}(A) \xrightarrow{\sim} V$ as B -modules, and the Hodge structure on $V_{\mathbf{Q}}(A) \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{R} = H_1(A(\mathbf{C}), \mathbf{R})$ defines an element $x_{\infty} \in X$. By the definition of $\mathbf{Sh}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K^p)$, there exists an element $\alpha \in \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}$ such that the isomorphism

$$h^p := (\eta \otimes 1) \circ \alpha \circ \alpha_0^{-1} (\eta_0 \otimes 1)^{-1} \in G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$$

preserves the alternating pairing $\langle _, _ \rangle_F$ on $V \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p}$ up to a scalar in $\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p,\times}$. Such an element α is unique up to right multiplication by elements in K^p , and it follows that h^p is well defined up to right multiplication by elements of $K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{*,p} := g^p K^p g^{p,-1} \cap G^*(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$. Viewing h^p as an element of $G^*(\mathbf{A}^{\infty})$ with p -component equal to 1, then $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p}) \mapsto [x_{\infty}, h^p]$ defines a map

$$f : \widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K^p)(\mathbf{C}) \rightarrow \mathrm{Sh}(G^*, K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{*,p})(\mathbf{C}) \cong G^*(\mathbf{Q}) \backslash (X \times G^*(\mathbf{A}^{\infty}) / K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{*,p} K_p^*).$$

By the complex uniformization of abelian varieties, it is easy to see that f is bijective, and f descends to an isomorphism of algebraic varieties over \mathbf{Q} by the theory of canonical models. \square

Remark 2.11. In general, there is no canonical choice for g^p in the above proposition. Different choices of g^p will result in different $K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{*,p}$, which are conjugate to each other in $G^*(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$. Consequently, the corresponding $\mathbf{Sh}(G^*, K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{*,p})$ are isomorphic to each other by the Hecke action of some elements in $G^*(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$. However, if $\mathfrak{c} = \mathfrak{c}^{\mathrm{tri}}$ is the trivial equivalence class, g^p has a canonical choice, namely $g^p = 1$. In the sequel, we will always take $g^p = 1$ if $\mathfrak{c} = \mathfrak{c}^{\mathrm{tri}}$. Applying Proposition 2.10 to this case, one obtains a moduli interpretation of $\mathrm{Sh}(G^*, K^{*,p})$ as well as an integral model $\mathbf{Sh}(G^*, K^{*,p})$ over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$ of $\mathrm{Sh}(G^*, K^{*,p})$. Explicitly, the integral model $\mathbf{Sh}(G^*, K^{*,p})$ parameterizes equivalence classes of tuples $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^{*,p}})$, where (A, ι, λ) is the same data as in $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K^p)$, and $\alpha_{K^{*,p}}$ is a $K^{*,p}$ -level structure on A , that is, an $K^{*,p}$ -orbit of isomorphisms $\alpha : V \otimes \mathbf{A}^{\infty,p} \xrightarrow{\sim} \widehat{V}^p(A)$ such that $\langle _, _ \rangle_F$ is compatible with $\widehat{\Psi}_F^{\lambda}$ up to a scalar in $\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p,\times}$.

Example 2.12. Fix a lattice $\Lambda \subseteq V$ stable under \mathcal{O}_B such that $\langle \Lambda, \Lambda \rangle_F \subseteq \mathfrak{d}_F^{-1}$, where \mathfrak{d}_F is the different of F/\mathbf{Q} , and that $\Lambda \otimes \mathbf{Z}_p$ is self-dual under $\langle _, _ \rangle_F$.

Let $\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N}$ be two ideals of \mathcal{O}_F such that they are mutually coprime, both prime to p and the ramification set \mathbf{R} of B , and that \mathfrak{N} is contained in $N\mathcal{O}_F$ for some integer $N \geq 4$. Let $K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p$ be a subgroup of $\gamma \in G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty,p})$ such that there exists $v \in \Lambda$ with $\gamma v \in (\mathcal{O}_F v + \mathfrak{M}\Lambda) \cap (v + \mathfrak{N}\Lambda)$; put $K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N}) = K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p K_p$. Then $K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p$ is neat and $\nu(K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})) = \widehat{\mathcal{O}}_F^{\times}$. We have thus isomorphisms

$$\mathbf{A}_F^{\infty,p,\times} / F_+^{p,\times} \nu(K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p) \cong \mathbf{A}_F^{\infty,\times} / F_+^{\times} \widehat{\mathcal{O}}_F^{\times} \cong \mathrm{Cl}^+(F),$$

where $\text{Cl}^+(F)$ is the strict ideal class group of F ; and the action of $\mathbf{A}^{\infty, \times}$ on $\text{Cl}^+(F)$ is trivial. We choose prime-to- p fractional ideals $\mathfrak{c}_1, \dots, \mathfrak{c}_h$ that form a set of representatives of $\text{Cl}^+(F)$. Then for each $\mathfrak{c} \in \{\mathfrak{c}_1, \dots, \mathfrak{c}_h\}$, the moduli scheme $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p)$ classifies tuples $(A, \iota, \lambda, C_{\mathfrak{M}}, \alpha_{\mathfrak{N}})$, where

- (A, ι) is a projective abelian scheme equipped with real multiplication by \mathcal{O}_B ;
- $\lambda: A \rightarrow A^\vee$ is an \mathcal{O}_F -linear polarization such that $\iota(b)^\vee \circ \lambda = \lambda \circ \iota(b^*)$ for $b \in \mathcal{O}_B$, and the induced map of abelian fppf-sheaves

$$A^\vee \xrightarrow{\sim} A \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathfrak{c}$$

is an isomorphism;

- $C_{\mathfrak{M}}$ is a finite flat subgroup scheme of $A[\mathfrak{M}]$ that is \mathcal{O}_B -cyclic of order $(\text{Nm } \mathfrak{M})^2$;
- $\alpha_{\mathfrak{N}}: (\mathcal{O}_F/\mathfrak{N})^{\oplus 2} \hookrightarrow A[\mathfrak{N}]$ is an embedding of finite étale group schemes equivariant under the action of $\mathcal{O}_B \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathcal{O}_F/\mathfrak{N} \cong \text{GL}_2(\mathcal{O}_F/\mathfrak{N})$.

Let $g_{\mathfrak{c}}^p \in G(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p})$ be such that the fractional ideal attached to the idèle $\nu(g_{\mathfrak{c}}^p) \in \mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, p, \times}$ represents the strict ideal class \mathfrak{c} . Put

$$K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{\star, p} := g_{\mathfrak{c}}^p K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p g_{\mathfrak{c}}^{p, -1} \cap G^*(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p}).$$

Then we have

$$\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p) \otimes \mathbf{Q} \cong \text{Sh}(G^*, K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{\star, p}).$$

More explicitly, if $\Gamma_{0,1}^{\mathfrak{c}}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N}) := G^*(\mathbf{Q})_+ \cap K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{\star, p}$, where $G^*(\mathbf{Q})_+ \subseteq G^*(\mathbf{Q})$ is the subgroup of elements with totally positive reduced norms, then

$$\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p)(\mathbf{C}) \cong \text{Sh}(G^*, K_{\mathfrak{c}}^{\star, p})(\mathbf{C}) \cong \Gamma_{0,1}^{\mathfrak{c}}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N}) \backslash (\mathfrak{H}^+)^{\Sigma_{\infty}}.$$

In particular, $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p) \otimes \mathbf{Q}$ is geometrically connected for every \mathfrak{c} . In this case, one has $\Delta_{K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p} = \mathcal{O}_{F,+}^{\times} / \mathcal{O}_{F,\mathfrak{N}}^{\times, 2}$, where $\mathcal{O}_{F,\mathfrak{N}}^{\times}$ denotes the subgroup of $\xi \in \mathcal{O}_F^{\times}$ with $\xi \equiv 1 \pmod{\mathfrak{N}}$. It is clear that the action of $\Delta_{K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p}$ preserves $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p)$, and one obtains

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p) \cong \prod_{i=1}^h \mathbf{Sh}^{\mathfrak{c}_i}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p)$$

with $\mathbf{Sh}^{\mathfrak{c}_i}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p) = \widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}^{\mathfrak{c}_i}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p) / \Delta_{K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p}$. Since $\Delta_{K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p}$ acts freely on $\widetilde{\mathbf{Sh}}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p)$, each $\mathbf{Sh}^{\mathfrak{c}_i}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{M}, \mathfrak{N})^p)$ is a smooth quasi-projective scheme over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$.

2.6. Comparison of quaternionic and unitary moduli problems. We now compare the integral model $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ defined in (2.5.1) and the one constructed using the unitary Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)$ with $\mathfrak{S} = \emptyset$. Note that when $\mathfrak{S} = \emptyset$, there is only one choice for \mathfrak{S} , so we write simply G' for $G'_{\mathfrak{S}}$. By the universal extension property of $\mathbf{Sh}(G) := \varprojlim_{K^p} \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$, these two integral canonical models are necessarily isomorphic. However, for later applications to the supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$, one needs a more explicit comparison between the universal family of abelian varieties over $\mathbf{Sh}(G)$ (as in Remark 2.9(1)) with that over $\mathbf{Sh}(G')$. It suffices to compare the universal objects over the neutral connected components via the isomorphism

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G)_{\mathbf{Z}_p^{\text{ur}}}^{\circ} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sh}(G')_{\mathbf{Z}_p^{\text{ur}}}^{\circ}$$

induced by (2.3.1). Here, $\mathbf{Sh}(G)_{\mathbf{Z}_p^{\text{ur}}}^{\circ}$ is defined similarly as $\mathbf{Sh}(G')_{\mathbf{Z}_p^{\text{ur}}}^{\circ}$; in other words, it is the closure of $\text{Sh}(G)^{\circ}$ in $\mathbf{Sh}(G) \otimes \mathbf{Z}_p^{\text{ur}}$.

The natural inclusion $G^* \hookrightarrow G$ induces also an isomorphism of derived and adjoint groups, and is compatible with Deligne homomorphisms. By Deligne's theory of connected Shimura varieties, it induces an isomorphism of neutral connected components $\mathbf{Sh}(G^*)^{\circ} \cong \mathbf{Sh}(G)^{\circ}$. Therefore, we are reduced to comparing the universal family over $\mathbf{Sh}(G^*)$ and $\mathbf{Sh}(G')$.

Recall that we have chosen an element $\gamma \in B^\times$ to define the pairing $\langle _, _ \rangle_F$ on $V = B$. We take the symmetric element $\delta \in D_{\mathfrak{S}}^\times$ in §2.4 to be $\delta = \frac{\gamma}{2\sqrt{\delta}}$. One has $W = V \otimes_F E$, and

$$\psi(x \otimes 1, y \otimes 1) = \langle x, y \rangle$$

for any $x, y \in V$. Put $\langle _, _ \rangle := \text{Tr}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} \circ \langle _, _ \rangle_F$. Then G^\star (resp. G') can be viewed as the similitude group of $(V, \langle _, _ \rangle)$ (resp. (W, ψ) (2.4.1)); and there exists a natural injection $G^\star \hookrightarrow G$ compatible with Deligne homomorphisms that induces isomorphisms on the associated derived and adjoint groups.

We take $\mathcal{O}_{D_\emptyset} = \mathcal{O}_B \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathcal{O}_E$. Let $K^{\star p} \subseteq G^\star(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p})$ and $K'^p \subseteq G'(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p})$ be sufficiently small open compact subgroups with $K^{\star p} \subseteq K'^p$. To each point $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K^{\star, p}})$ of $\mathbf{Sh}(G^\star, K^{\star, p})$ with values in a \mathbf{Z}_p -scheme S , we attach the tuple $(A', \iota', \lambda', \bar{\alpha}_{K'^p}^{\text{rat}})$, where

- $A' = A \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathcal{O}_E$;
- $\iota': \mathcal{O}_{D_\emptyset} \rightarrow \text{End}_S(A')$ is the action induced by ι ;
- $\lambda': A' \rightarrow A'^\vee$ is the prime-to- p polarization given by

$$A' = A \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathcal{O}_E \xrightarrow{\lambda \otimes 1} A^\vee \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathcal{O}_E \xrightarrow{1 \otimes i} A^\vee \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathfrak{d}_{E/F}^{-1} \cong A'^\vee,$$

where $\mathfrak{d}_{E/F}^{-1}$ is the inverse of the relative differential of E/F and $i: \mathcal{O}_E \rightarrow \mathfrak{d}_{E/F}^{-1}$ is the natural inclusion;

- $\bar{\alpha}_{K'^p}^{\text{rat}}$ is a rational K'^p -level structure on A' induced by $\bar{\alpha}_{K^{\star, p}}$ by the compatibility of alternating forms $(V, \langle _, _ \rangle)$ and (W, ψ) . Here, we use the moduli interpretation of $\mathbf{Sh}(G', K'^p)$ in terms of isogeny classes of abelian varieties (See Remark 2.3).

This defines a morphism

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G^\star, K^{\star p}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G', K'^p)$$

over \mathbf{Z}_p extending the morphism $\mathbf{Sh}(G^\star, K'^{\star p}) \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{Q}_p \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G', K'^p) \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} \mathbf{Q}_p$. Taking the projective limit on the prime-to- p levels, one gets a morphism of schemes over \mathbf{Z}_p :

$$\mathbf{f}: \mathbf{Sh}(G^\star) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G')$$

such that one has an isomorphism of abelian schemes:

$$\mathbf{f}^* \mathcal{A}' \cong \mathcal{A} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathcal{O}_E,$$

where \mathcal{A} (resp. \mathcal{A}') is the universal abelian scheme over $\mathbf{Sh}(G^\star)$ (resp. over $\mathbf{Sh}(G')$). By the extension property of the integral canonical model, the map \mathbf{f} induces an isomorphism

$$\mathbf{f}^\circ: \mathbf{Sh}(G^\star)^\circ \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sh}(G')^\circ$$

which extends the isomorphism $\mathbf{Sh}(G^\star)^\circ \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sh}(G')^\circ$ induced by the morphism of Shimura data on the generic fibers. Thus the two universal families over $\mathbf{Sh}(G)^\circ$ induced from $\mathbf{Sh}(G^\star)$ and $\mathbf{Sh}(G')$ respectively are related by the relation

$$(2.6.1) \quad \mathbf{f}^{\circ, *}(A' |_{\mathbf{Sh}(G')^\circ}) \cong A |_{\mathbf{Sh}(G)^\circ} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_F} \mathcal{O}_E.$$

3. GOREN–OORT CYCLES AND SUPERSINGULAR LOCUS

In this chapter, we study the supersingular locus and the superspecial locus of certain Shimura varieties established in the previous chapter.

3.1. Notation and conventions. Let k be a perfect field containing all the residue fields of the auxiliary field E in §2.2 at p -adic places, and $W(k)$ be the ring of Witt vectors. Then $\Sigma_{E,\infty}$ is in natural bijection with $\mathrm{Hom}_{\mathbf{Z}}(\mathcal{O}_E, W(k))$, and we have a canonical decomposition

$$\mathcal{O}_{D_{\mathfrak{s}}} \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} W(k) \cong \mathrm{Mat}_2(\mathcal{O}_E \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} W(k)) = \bigoplus_{\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}} \mathrm{M}(W(k)).$$

Let S be a $W(k)$ -scheme, and N a coherent $\mathcal{O}_S \otimes \mathcal{O}_{D_{\mathfrak{s}}}$ -module. Then one has a canonical decomposition

$$N = \bigoplus_{\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}} N_{\tilde{\tau}},$$

where $N_{\tilde{\tau}}$ is a left $\mathrm{Mat}_2(\mathcal{O}_S)$ -module on which \mathcal{O}_E acts via $\tilde{\tau}: \mathcal{O}_E \xrightarrow{\tilde{\tau}} W(k) \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_S$. We also denote by $N_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$ the direct summand $\mathfrak{e} \cdot N_{\tilde{\tau}}$ with $\mathfrak{e} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \in \mathrm{Mat}_2(\mathcal{O}_S)$, and we call $M_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$ the *reduced $\tilde{\tau}$ -component* of M .

Let k_0 be the smallest subfield of $\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}$ containing all the residue fields of the auxiliary field E . Then it is a finite extension of \mathbf{F}_p of degree $\max\{(1 + g_{\mathfrak{p}} - 2\lfloor g_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)g_{\mathfrak{p}} \mid \mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p\}$. Consider a quaternionic Shimura variety $\mathrm{Sh}(G_{\mathfrak{s}}, K^p)$ of type considered in §2.1 and associated unitary Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{s}}, K'^p)$ over $\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\mathfrak{s}}}$ constructed in §2.4. Put

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{s}}, K'^p)_{k_0} = \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{s}}, K'^p) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{\tilde{\mathfrak{s}}}} k_0.$$

The universal abelian scheme over $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{s}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ is usually denoted by $\mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{s}}$.

3.2. Hasse invariants. We recall first the definition of essential invariant on $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{s}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ defined in [TX16, §4.4]. Let $(A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K'^p})$ be an S -valued point of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{s}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ for some k_0 -scheme S . Recall that $\mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A/S)$ is the relative de Rham homology of A . Let $\omega_{A^{\vee}}$ be the module of invariant differential 1-forms on A^{\vee} . Then for each $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}$, $\mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}$ is a locally free \mathcal{O}_S -module on S of rank 2, and one has a Hodge filtration

$$0 \rightarrow \omega_{A^{\vee}, \tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \mathrm{Lie}(A/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow 0.$$

We defined, for each $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}$, the essential Verschiebung

$$V_{\mathrm{es}, \tilde{\tau}}: \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A^{(p)}/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \cong \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A/S)_{\sigma^{-1}\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ, (p)},$$

to be the usual Verschiebung map if $s_{\sigma^{-1}\tilde{\tau}} = 0$ or 1, and to be the inverse of Frobenius if $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 2$. This is plausible since for $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 2$, the Frobenius map $F: \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A^{(p)}/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$ is an isomorphism. For every integer $n \geq 1$, we denote by

$$V_{\mathrm{es}}^n: \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A^{(p^n)}/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \cong \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A/S)_{\sigma^{-n}\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ, (p^n)}$$

the n -th iteration of the essential Verschiebung.

Similarly, if $S = \mathrm{Spec} k$ is the spectrum of a perfect field k containing k_0 , then one can define the essential Verschiebung

$$V_{\mathrm{es}}: \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\sigma^{-1}\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \quad \text{for all } \tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty},$$

as the usual Verschiebung on Dieudonné modules if $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 0, 1$ and as the inverse of the usual Frobenius if $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 2$. Here $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)$ denote the covariant Dieudonné module of $A[p^{\infty}]$. This is a σ^{-1} -semi-linear map of $W(k)$ -modules. For any integer $n \geq 1$, we denote also by

$$V_{\mathrm{es}}^n: \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\sigma^{-n}\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$$

the n -th iteration of the essential Verschiebung.

Now return to a general base S over k_0 . For $\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty} - \mathbf{S}_{\infty}$, let $n_{\tau} = n_{\tau}(\mathbf{S})$ denote the smallest integer $n \geq 1$ such that $\sigma^{-n}\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty} - \mathbf{S}_{\infty}$. Assumption 2.1 implies that n_{τ} is odd. Then for each

$\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}$ with $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 1$, or equivalently each $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}$ lifting some $\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty} - \mathbf{S}_{\infty}$, the restriction of $V_{\text{es}}^{n_{\tau}}$ to $\omega_{A^{\vee},\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$ defines a map

$$h_{\tilde{\tau}}(A): \omega_{A^{\vee},\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \omega_{A^{\vee},\sigma^{-n_{\tau}}\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ,(p^{n_{\tau}})} \cong (\omega_{A^{\vee},\sigma^{-n_{\tau}}\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ})^{\otimes p^{n_{\tau}}}.$$

Applying this construction to the universal object, one gets a global section

$$(3.2.1) \quad h_{\tilde{\tau}} \in \Gamma(\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathbf{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}, (\omega_{A'_{\mathbf{S}},\sigma^{-n_{\tau}}\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ})^{\otimes p^{n_{\tau}}} \otimes (\omega_{A'_{\mathbf{S}},\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ})^{\otimes -1}).$$

called the τ -th partial Hasse invariant.

Proposition 3.1. *Let $x = (A, \iota, \lambda, \bar{\alpha}_{K'^p})$ be an \mathbf{F}_p^{ac} -point of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathbf{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$, and \mathfrak{p} a p -adic place of F such that $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \neq \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$. Assume that $h_{\tilde{\tau}}(A) \neq 0$ for all $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ with $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 1$. Then the p -divisible group $A[\mathfrak{p}^{\infty}]$ is not supersingular.*

Proof. The covariant Dieudonné module $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)$ of $A[p^{\infty}]$ is a free $W(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}) \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}} \mathcal{O}_{D_{\mathbf{S}}}$ -module of rank 1. Then the covariant Dieudonné module of $A[\mathfrak{p}^{\infty}]$ is given by

$$\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A[\mathfrak{p}^{\infty}]) = \bigoplus_{\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{p}}} \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ,\oplus 2},$$

and there exists a canonical isomorphism

$$\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}/p\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \cong \mathbf{H}_1^{\text{dR}}(A/\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}.$$

By assumption, for all $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ lifting some $\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} - \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$, the map

$$h_{\tilde{\tau}}(A): \omega_{A^{\vee},\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \omega_{A^{\vee},\sigma^{-n_{\tau}}\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ,(p^{n_{\tau}})}$$

is non-vanishing. Thus it is an isomorphism, as both the source and the target are one-dimensional \mathbf{F}_p^{ac} -vector spaces. For each $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ lifting some $\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} - \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$, choose a basis $e_{\tilde{\tau}}$ for $\omega_{A^{\vee},\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$, and extend it to a basis $(e_{\tilde{\tau}}, f_{\tilde{\tau}})$ of $\mathbf{H}_1^{\text{dR}}(A/\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$. If we consider V_{es} as a σ^{-1} -linear map on $\mathbf{H}_1^{\text{dR}}(A/\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$, then one has

$$V_{\text{es}}^{n_{\tau}}(e_{\tilde{\tau}}, f_{\tilde{\tau}}) = (e_{\sigma^{-n_{\tau}}\tilde{\tau}}, f_{\sigma^{-n_{\tau}}\tilde{\tau}}) \begin{pmatrix} u_{\tilde{\tau}} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

with $u_{\tilde{\tau}} \in \mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac},\times}$.

Let \mathfrak{q} be a p -adic place of E above \mathfrak{p} . Note that no matter whether \mathfrak{p} is split or inert in E , $g_{\mathfrak{q}} := [E_{\mathfrak{q}} : \mathbf{Q}_p]$ is always even by our choice of E . To prove the proposition, it suffices to show that the p -divisible group $A[\mathfrak{q}^{\infty}]$ is not supersingular. By composing the essential Verschiebung maps on all $\mathbf{H}_1^{\text{dR}}(A/S)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$ with $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{q}}$, we get

$$V_{\text{es}}^{g_{\mathfrak{q}}}(e_{\tilde{\tau}}, f_{\tilde{\tau}}) = (e_{\tilde{\tau}}, f_{\tilde{\tau}}) \begin{pmatrix} \bar{a}_{\tilde{\tau}} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

with $\bar{a}_{\tilde{\tau}} \in \mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac},\times}$ for all $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{q}}$ with $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 1$. Now, note that $V_{\text{es}}^{g_{\mathfrak{q}}}$ on $\mathbf{H}_1^{\text{dR}}(A/\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$ is nothing but the reduction modulo p of the $\sigma^{-g_{\mathfrak{q}}}$ -linear map

$$V^{g_{\mathfrak{q}}}/p^m: \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ},$$

where m is the number of $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{q}}$ with $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 2$. If $(\tilde{e}_{\tilde{\tau}}, \tilde{f}_{\tilde{\tau}})$ is a lift of $(e_{\tilde{\tau}}, f_{\tilde{\tau}})$ to a basis of $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$ over $W(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$, then $V^{g_{\mathfrak{q}}}/p^m$ on $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$ is given by

$$\frac{V^{g_{\mathfrak{q}}}}{p^m}(\tilde{e}_{\tilde{\tau}}, \tilde{f}_{\tilde{\tau}}) = (\tilde{e}_{\tilde{\tau}}, \tilde{f}_{\tilde{\tau}}) \begin{pmatrix} a_{\tilde{\tau}} & pb_{\tilde{\tau}} \\ pc_{\tilde{\tau}} & pd_{\tilde{\tau}} \end{pmatrix}$$

for some $a_{\tilde{\tau}} \in W(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})^{\times}$ lifting $\bar{a}_{\tilde{\tau}}$ and $b_{\tilde{\tau}}, c_{\tilde{\tau}}, d_{\tilde{\tau}} \in W(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$. Put

$$L = \bigcap_{n \geq 1} \left(\frac{V^{g_{\mathfrak{q}}}}{p^m} \right)^n \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}.$$

It is easy to see that L is a $W(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$ -direct summand of $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$ of rank one, on which V^{g_p}/p^m acts bijectively. It follows that $1 - m/g_q$ is a slope of the p -divisible group $A[\mathfrak{q}^{\infty}]$. By our choice of the $s_{\tilde{\tau}}$'s in §2.2, the two sets $\{\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/q} \mid s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 2\}$ and $\{\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/fq} \mid s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 0\}$ have the same cardinality, hence $2m < g_q$. Therefore, $A[\mathfrak{q}^{\infty}]$ hence $A[\mathfrak{p}^{\infty}]$, are not supersingular. \square

3.3. Goren–Oort divisors. For each $\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty} - \mathbf{S}_{\infty}$, let $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}$ denote the closed subscheme of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ defined by the vanishing of $h_{\tilde{\tau}}$ for some $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}$ lifting τ . By [TX16, Lemma 4.5], $h_{\tilde{\tau}}$ vanishes at a point x of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ if and only if $h_{\tilde{\tau}^c}$ vanishes at x . In particular, $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}$ does not depend on the choice of $\tilde{\tau}$ lifting τ . We call $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}$ the τ -th Goren–Oort divisor of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. For a non-empty subset $\mathbf{T} \subseteq \Sigma_{\infty} - \mathbf{S}_{\infty}$, we put

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \mathbf{T}} = \bigcap_{\tau \in \mathbf{T}} \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}.$$

According to [TX16, Proposition 4.7], $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \mathbf{T}}$ is a proper and smooth closed subvariety of $X'_{\mathfrak{S}}$ of codimension $\#\mathbf{T}$; in other words, the union $\bigcup_{\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty} - \mathbf{S}_{\infty}} \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}$ is a strict normal crossing divisor of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$.

In [TX16], we gave an explicit description of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ in terms of another unitary Shimura variety of type in §2.4. To describe this, let $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$ denote the p -adic place induced by τ . Set

$$(3.3.1) \quad \mathbf{S}_{\tau} = \begin{cases} \mathbf{S} \cup \{\tau, \sigma^{-n_{\tau}} \tau\} & \text{if } \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \neq \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\tau\}, \\ \mathbf{S} \cup \{\tau, \mathfrak{p}\} & \text{if } \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} = \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\tau\}. \end{cases}$$

We fix a lifting $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}$ of τ , and take $\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\tau, \infty}$ to be $\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\infty} \cup \{\tilde{\tau}, \sigma^{-n_{\tau}} \tilde{\tau}^c\}$ if $\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \neq \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\tau\}$, and to be $\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\infty} \cup \{\tilde{\tau}\}$ if $\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} = \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\tau\}$. This choice of $\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\tau, \infty}$ satisfies Assumption 2.2. We note that both $D_{\mathfrak{S}}$ and $D_{\mathbf{S}_{\tau}}$ are isomorphic to $\text{Mat}_2(E)$. We fix an isomorphism $D_{\mathfrak{S}} \cong D_{\mathbf{S}_{\tau}}$, and let $\mathcal{O}_{D_{\mathbf{S}_{\tau}}}$ denote the order of $D_{\mathbf{S}_{\tau}}$ correspond to $\mathcal{O}_{D_{\mathfrak{S}}}$ under this isomorphism.

Proposition 3.2 ([TX16, Theorem 5.2]). *Under the above notation, there exists a canonical projection*

$$\pi'_{\tau} : \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\tau}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$$

where

- (1) if $\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \neq \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\tau\}$, then π'_{τ} is a \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration over $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\tau}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ such that the restriction of π'_{τ} to $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \{\tau, \sigma^{-n_{\tau}} \tau\}}$ is an isomorphism;
- (2) if $\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} = \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\tau\}$, then π'_{τ} is an isomorphism.

Moreover, π'_{τ} is equivariant under prime-to- p Hecke correspondences when K'^p varies, and there exists a p -quasi-isogeny

$$\phi : \mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{S}} |_{\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}} \rightarrow \pi'^*_{\tau} \mathcal{A}'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\tau}}$$

that is compatible with polarizations and K'^p -level structures on both sides, and that induces an isomorphism of relative de Rham homology groups

$$\phi_{*, \tau} : \mathbf{H}_1^{\text{dR}}(\mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{S}} |_{\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}} / \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau})_{\tilde{\tau}'}^{\circ} \cong \mathbf{H}_1^{\text{dR}}(\mathcal{A}'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\tau}} / \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\tau}}, K'^p))_{\tilde{\tau}'}^{\circ}$$

for any $\tilde{\tau}' \in \Sigma_{E,\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ lifting some $\tau' \in \Sigma_{\infty} - \mathbf{S}_{\tau, \infty/\mathfrak{p}}$.

Here, we are content to illustrate the map π'_{τ} and the quasi-isogeny ϕ on \mathbf{F}_p^{ac} -points. Take $x = (A, \iota_A, \lambda_A, \alpha_A) \in \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$. Denote by $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)^{\circ} = \bigoplus_{\tilde{\tau}' \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}} \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}'}^{\circ}$ the reduced covariant Dieudonné module as usual. Consider a $W(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$ -lattice $M^{\circ} = \bigoplus_{\tilde{\tau}' \in \Sigma_{E,\infty}} M_{\tilde{\tau}'}^{\circ}$ of $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)^{\circ}[1/p]$

such that

$$M_{\tilde{\tau}'}^\circ = \begin{cases} F_{\text{es}}^{n_\tau - \ell} \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}}}^\circ & \text{if } \tilde{\tau}' = \sigma^{-\ell} \tilde{\tau} \text{ with } 0 \leq \ell \leq n_\tau - 1, \\ \frac{1}{p} F_{\text{es}}^{n_\tau - \ell} \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}^c}}^\circ & \text{if } \tilde{\tau}' = \sigma^{-\ell} \tilde{\tau}^c \text{ with } 0 \leq \ell \leq n_\tau - 1 \text{ and } \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \neq \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\tau\}, \\ \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}'}^\circ & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Note that the condition that $h_{\tilde{\tau}}(A) = 0$ is equivalent to $\tilde{\omega}_{A^\vee, \tilde{\tau}}^\circ = F_{\text{es}}^{n_\tau}(\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}}}^\circ)$, where $\tilde{\omega}_{A^\vee, \tilde{\tau}}^\circ$ denotes the preimage of $\omega_{A^\vee, \tilde{\tau}}^\circ$ under the natural reduction map

$$\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^\circ \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^\circ / p \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^\circ \cong \mathrm{H}_1^{\mathrm{dR}}(A/\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}})_{\tilde{\tau}}^\circ.$$

Using this property, one checks easily that M° is a Dieudonné submodule of $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)^\circ[1/p]$. Put $M = M^\circ \oplus^2$ equipped with the natural action of $\mathcal{O}_{D_s} \otimes \mathbf{Z}_p \cong \mathrm{Mat}_2(\mathcal{O}_E \otimes \mathbf{Z}_p)$. Then M corresponds to a p -divisible group G equipped with an \mathcal{O}_{D_s} -action and an \mathcal{O}_{D_s} -linear isogeny $\phi_p: A[p^\infty] \rightarrow G$. Thus there exists an abelian variety B over $\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}$ with $B[p^\infty] = G$ and a p -quasi-isogeny $\phi: A \rightarrow B$ such that ϕ_p is obtained by taking the p^∞ -torsion of ϕ . Moreover, by construction, it is easy to see that

$$\dim \mathrm{Lie}(B)_{\tilde{\tau}'}^\circ = \begin{cases} \dim(\mathrm{Lie}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}'}^\circ) & \text{if } \tilde{\tau}' \neq \tilde{\tau}, \sigma^{-n_\tau} \tilde{\tau}, \\ 0 & \text{if } \tilde{\tau}' = \tilde{\tau}, \sigma^{-n_\tau} \tilde{\tau}^c, \\ 2 & \text{if } \tilde{\tau}' = \tilde{\tau}^c, \sigma^{-n_\tau} \tilde{\tau}. \end{cases}$$

In other words, the \mathcal{O}_E -action on B satisfies Kottwitz' condition for $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_\tau}, K^p)$. Moreover, λ_A and α_A induce an $\mathcal{O}_{D_{s_\tau}}$ -linear prime-to- p polarization λ_B via the fixed isomorphism $\mathcal{O}_{D_s} \simeq \mathcal{O}_{D_{s_\tau}}$ and a K^p -level structure α_B on B , respectively, such that $(B, \iota_B, \lambda_B, \bar{\alpha}_B)$ is an $\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}$ -point of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_\tau}, K^p)$. The resulting map $(A, \iota_A, \lambda_A, \bar{\alpha}_A) \mapsto (B, \iota_B, \lambda_B, \bar{\alpha}_B)$ is nothing but π'_τ .

If $\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \neq \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\tau\}$, then $\sigma^{-n_\tau} \tau \neq \tau$ and we have $\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(B)_{\sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}}}^\circ = \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}}}^\circ$ by construction. To recover A from B , it suffices to “remember” the line $\omega_{A^\vee, \sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}}}^\circ$ inside the two dimensional $\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}$ -vector space

$$\tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}}}^\circ / p \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}}}^\circ = \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(B)_{\sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}}}^\circ / p \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(B)_{\sigma^{-n_\tau \tilde{\tau}}}^\circ.$$

This means that the fiber of π'_τ over a point $(B, \iota_B, \lambda_B, \bar{\alpha}_B) \in \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_\tau}, K^p)$ is isomorphic to \mathbb{P}^1 . On the other hand, if $\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} = \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\tau\}$ then $n_\tau = [F_p : \mathbf{Q}_p]$ is odd, one can completely recover A from B , and thus π'_τ induces a bijection on closed points². The moreover part of the statement follows from the construction of π'_τ .

3.4. Periodic semi-meanders. Following [TX14], we iterate the construction of Goren–Oort divisors to produce some closed subvarieties called Goren–Oort cycles. To parameterize those cycles, one need to recall some combinatory data introduced in [TX14, §3.1].

For a prime $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$, put $d_{\mathfrak{p}}(\mathbf{S}) = g_{\mathfrak{p}} - \#\mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$. If there is no confusion, then we write $d_{\mathfrak{p}} = d_{\mathfrak{p}}(\mathbf{S})$ for simplicity. Consider the cylinder $C: x^2 + y^2 = 1$ in 3-dimensional Euclidean space, and let C_0 be the section with $z = 0$. We write $\Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} = \{\tau_0, \dots, \tau_{g_{\mathfrak{p}}-1}\}$ such that $\tau_j = \sigma \tau_{j-1}$ for $j \in \mathbf{Z}/g_{\mathfrak{p}}\mathbf{Z}$. For $0 \leq j \leq g_{\mathfrak{p}} - 1$, we use τ_j to label the point $(\cos \frac{2\pi j}{g_{\mathfrak{p}}}, \sin \frac{2\pi j}{g_{\mathfrak{p}}}, 0)$ on C_0 . If $\tau_j \in \mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$, then we put a plus sign at τ_j ; otherwise, we put a node at τ_j . We call such a picture *the band* associated to $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$. We often draw the picture on the 2-dimensional xy -plane by thinking of x -axis modulo $g_{\mathfrak{p}}$. We put the points $\tau_0, \dots, \tau_{g_{\mathfrak{p}}-1}$ on the x -axis with coordinates $x = 0, \dots, g_{\mathfrak{p}} - 1$ respectively. For example, if $g_{\mathfrak{p}} = 6$ and $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} = \{\tau_1, \tau_3, \tau_4\}$, then we draw the band as

$$\bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet$$

²To show that π'_τ is indeed an isomorphism, one has to check also that π'_τ induces isomorphisms of tangent spaces to each closed point. This is the most technical part of [TX16]. For more details, see [TX16, Lemma 5.20].

A *periodic semi-meander* for $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}$ is a collection of curves (called *arcs*) that link two nodes of the band for $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}$, and straight lines (called *semi-lines*) that links a node to the infinity (that is, the direction $y \rightarrow +\infty$ in the 2-dimensional picture) subject to the following conditions:

- (1) All the arcs and semi-lines lie on the cylinder above the band (that is to have positive y -coordinate in the 2-dimensional picture).
- (2) Every node of the band for $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}$ is exactly one end point of an arc or a semi-line.
- (3) There are no intersection points among these arcs and semi-lines.

The number of arcs is denoted by r (so $r \leq d_p/2$), and the number of semi-lines $d_p - 2r$ is called the *defect* of the periodic semi-meander. Two periodic semi-meanders are considered as the same if they can be continuously deformed into each other while keeping the above three properties in the process. We use $\mathfrak{B}(\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}, r)$ denote the set of semi-meanders for $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}$ with r arcs (up to continuous deformations). For example, if $g_p = 7$, $r = 2$, and $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p} = \{\tau_1, \tau_4\}$, then we have $d_p = 5$ and

$$(3.4.1) \quad \mathfrak{B}(\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}, 2) = \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \\ \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \\ \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet, \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet \end{array} \right\}.$$

It is easy to see that the cardinality of $\mathfrak{B}(\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}, r)$ is $\binom{d_p}{r}$. In fact, the map that associates to each element $\mathbf{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}, r)$ the set of right end points of arcs in \mathbf{a} establishes a bijection between $\mathfrak{B}(\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}, r)$ and the subsets with cardinality r of the d_p -nodes in the band of $\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}$.

3.5. Goren–Oort cycles and supersingular locus. We fix a lifting $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E, \infty/p}$ for each $\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty/p} - \mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}$.

For a periodic semi-meander $\mathbf{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}, r)$ with $r \geq 1$, we put

$$\mathbf{S}_{\mathbf{a}} = \mathbf{S} \cup \{\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty/p} \mid \tau \text{ is an end point of some arc in } \mathbf{a}\}.$$

For an arc δ in \mathbf{a} , we use τ_{δ}^+ and τ_{δ}^- to denote its right and left end points respectively. We take

$$\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\mathbf{a}, \infty} = \tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\infty} \cup \{\tilde{\tau}_{\delta}^+, \tilde{\tau}_{\delta}^{-,c} \mid \delta \text{ is an arc of } \mathbf{a}\}.$$

Here, $\tilde{\tau}_{\delta}^+$ denotes the fixed lifting of τ_{δ}^+ , and $\tilde{\tau}_{\delta}^{-,c}$ the conjugate of the fixed lifting $\tilde{\tau}_{\delta}^-$ of τ_{δ}^- . We fix an isomorphism $G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\mathbf{a}}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty}) \cong G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty})$, and consider K'^p as an open compact subgroup of $G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\mathbf{a}}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p})$. We may thus speak of the unitary Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\mathbf{a}}}, K'^p)$.

Following [TX14, §3.7], for every $\mathbf{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}, r)$, we construct a closed subvariety $Z'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\mathbf{a}) \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ of codimension r , which is an r -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration over $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. We make the induction on $r \geq 0$. When $r = 0$, we put simply $Z'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\mathbf{a}) = \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. Assume now $r \geq 1$. An arc in \mathbf{a} is called *basic*, if it does not lie below any other arcs. Choose such a basic arc δ , and put $\tau = \tau_{\delta}^+$, $\tau^- = \tau_{\delta}^-$ for simplicity. We note that $\tau^- = \sigma^{-n_{\tau}} \tau$. Consider the Goren–Oort divisor $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}$, and let $\pi'_{\tau}: \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\tau}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ be the \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration given by Proposition 3.2. Let $\mathbf{a}_{\delta} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathbf{S}_{\mathbf{a}, \infty/p}, r-1)$ be the periodic semi-meander for $\mathbf{S}_{\mathbf{a}}$ obtained from \mathbf{a} by replacing the nodes at τ, τ^- with plus signs and removing the arc δ . For instance, if

$$\mathbf{a} = \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet$$

as in the example (3.4.1), then $\mathbf{S}_{\mathbf{a}} = \mathbf{S} \cup \{\tau_2, \tau_3, \tau_5, \tau_6\}$, and the arc δ connecting τ_3 and τ_5 is the unique basic arc in \mathbf{a} , and

$$\mathbf{a}_{\delta} = \downarrow + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet + \bullet$$

By induction hypothesis, we have constructed a closed subvariety $Z'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\tau}}(\mathbf{a}_{\delta}) \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\tau}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ of codimension $r-1$. Then we define $Z'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\mathbf{a})$ as the preimage of $Z'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\tau}}(\mathbf{a}_{\delta})$ via π'_{τ} . We denote by

$$\pi'_{\mathbf{a}}: Z'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\mathbf{a}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\mathbf{a}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$$

the canonical projection. In summary, we have a diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 Z'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a}) & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau} & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi'_\tau & & \\
 \pi'_a \left(Z'_{\mathfrak{S}, \tau}(\mathfrak{a}_\delta) \right) & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}, \tau}, K'^p)_{k_0} & & \\
 \downarrow \pi'_{\mathfrak{a}_\delta} & & & & \\
 \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_a}, K'^p)_{k_0} & & & &
 \end{array}$$

where the square is cartesian. By the induction hypothesis, the morphism $\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}_\delta}$ is an $(r-1)$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration. It follows that π'_a is an r -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration.

We explain the relationship between Goren–Oort cycles and the \mathfrak{p} -supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. Take $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)$. If $d_{\mathfrak{p}}$ is even, then we put $W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a}) = Z'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})$. If $d_{\mathfrak{p}}$ is odd, then we let $\tau(\mathfrak{a}) \in \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ denote the end point of the unique semi-line in \mathfrak{a} , and define $W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})$ by the following Cartesian diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc}
 W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a}) & \hookrightarrow & Z'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a}) \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi'_a \\
 \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_a}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau(\mathfrak{a})} & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_a}, K'^p)_{k_0}.
 \end{array}$$

We put

$$(3.5.1) \quad \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_a^* = \begin{cases} \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_a = (\mathfrak{S}_a, \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{a, \infty}) & \text{if } d_{\mathfrak{p}} \text{ is even,} \\ (\mathfrak{S}_a \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\}, \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{a, \infty} \cup \{\tilde{\tau}(\mathfrak{a})\}) & \text{if } d_{\mathfrak{p}} \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

Note that the underlying set \mathfrak{S}_a^* of $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_a^*$ is independent of $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)$, namely all \mathfrak{S}_a^* are equal to

$$(3.5.2) \quad \mathfrak{S}(\mathfrak{p}) := \begin{cases} \mathfrak{S} \cup \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} & \text{if } d_{\mathfrak{p}} \text{ is even,} \\ \mathfrak{S} \cup \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\} & \text{if } d_{\mathfrak{p}} \text{ is odd.} \end{cases}$$

If $d_{\mathfrak{p}}$ is odd, then we have an isomorphism

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_a}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau(\mathfrak{a})} \cong \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_a^*}, K'^p)_{k_0}$$

by Proposition 3.2. Thus, regardless of the parity of $d_{\mathfrak{p}}$, one has a $\lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration equivariant under prime-to- p Hecke correspondences:

$$\pi'_a|_{W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})} : W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_a^*}, K'^p)_{k_0}.$$

Theorem 3.3. *Under the notation above, the union*

$$\bigcup_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)} W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})$$

is exactly the \mathfrak{p} -supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$, that is, the maximal closed subset where the universal \mathfrak{p} -divisible group $\mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{S}}[\mathfrak{p}^\infty]$ is supersingular.

Proof. We proceed by induction on $d_{\mathfrak{p}} \geq 0$. If $d_{\mathfrak{p}} = 0$, then $\mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, 0)$ consists only of the trivial periodic semi-meander (that is, the one without any arcs or semi-lines). In this case, one has to show that the whole $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ is \mathfrak{p} -supersingular. First, we have $s_{\tilde{\tau}} \in \{0, 2\}$ for all $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E, \infty/\mathfrak{p}}$, and Assumption 2.2(2) implies that the number of $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E, \infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ with $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 2$ equals exactly to the

number of $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E, \infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ with $s_{\tilde{\tau}} = 0$. Now consider a point $x = (A, \iota, \lambda, \alpha) \in \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$. Then, for every $\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E, \infty/\mathfrak{p}}$, the $2g_{\mathfrak{p}}$ -th iterated essential Verschiebung

$$V_{\text{es}}^{2g_{\mathfrak{p}}} = \frac{V^{2g_{\mathfrak{p}}}}{p^{g_{\mathfrak{p}}}} : \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} \rightarrow \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\sigma^{-2g_{\mathfrak{p}}}\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ} = \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}}^{\circ}$$

is bijective, no matter whether \mathfrak{p} is split or inert in E . It follows immediately that $1/2$ is the only slope of the Dieudonné module $\bigoplus_{\tilde{\tau} \in \Sigma_{E, \infty/\mathfrak{p}}} \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A)_{\tilde{\tau}} = \tilde{\mathcal{D}}(A[\mathfrak{p}^{\infty}])$, so that $A[\mathfrak{p}^{\infty}]$ is supersingular.

Assume now $d_{\mathfrak{p}} \geq 1$. We prove first that the union $\bigcup_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)} W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})$ is contained in the \mathfrak{p} -supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. Fix $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)$. Then one has a projection

$$\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}}|_{W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})} : W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$$

and a p -quasi-isogeny

$$\phi_{\mathfrak{a}} : \mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{S}}|_{W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})} \rightarrow \pi'^*_{\mathfrak{a}} \mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{a}}}$$

by the construction of $\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}}$ and Proposition 3.2. Note that $d_{\mathfrak{p}}(\mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{a}}) = 0$, and by the discussion above, $\mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{a}}}[\mathfrak{p}^{\infty}]$ is supersingular over the whole $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. It follows that $\mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{S}}[\mathfrak{p}^{\infty}]$ is supersingular over $W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})$.

To complete the proof, it remains to show that if $x \in \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$ is a \mathfrak{p} -supersingular point, then $x \in W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$ for some $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)$. By Proposition 3.1, there exists $\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}$ such that $x \in \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$. Consider the \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration $\pi'_{\tau} : \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\tau}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. Since $\mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{S}, x}$ is p -quasi-isogenous to $\mathcal{A}'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\tau}, \pi'_{\tau}(x)}$, we see that $\pi'_{\tau}(x)$ lies in the \mathfrak{p} -supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\tau}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. By the induction hypothesis, $\pi'_{\tau}(x) \in W'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\tau}}(\mathfrak{b})(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$ for some periodic semi-meander $\mathfrak{b} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\tau, \infty/\mathfrak{p}}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 - 1 \rfloor)$. Now let \mathfrak{a} be the periodic semi-meander obtained from \mathfrak{b} by adjoining an arc δ connecting $\sigma^{-n_{\tau}}\tau$ and τ so that τ is the right end point of δ . Then $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)$, and δ is a basic arc of \mathfrak{a} such that $\mathfrak{b} = \mathfrak{a}_{\delta}$. To finish the proof, it suffices to note that $W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a}) = \pi'^{-1}_{\tau}(W'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\tau}}(\mathfrak{b}))$ by definition. \square

Definition 3.4. We put

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}^{\mathfrak{p}\text{-SP}} := \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \Sigma_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}},$$

and call it the \mathfrak{p} -superspecial locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$.

We have the proposition characterizing the \mathfrak{p} -superspecial locus.

Proposition 3.5. *Let $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$ be such that $d_{\mathfrak{p}}$ is odd, and take $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, (d_{\mathfrak{p}} - 1)/2)$. Then $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}^{\mathfrak{p}\text{-SP}}$ is contained in $W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})$, and the restriction of $\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}}$ induces an isomorphism*

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}}, K'^p)_{k_0}^{\mathfrak{p}\text{-SP}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K'^p)_{k_0},$$

which is equivariant under prime-to- p Hecke correspondences.

Proof. We proceed by induction on $d_{\mathfrak{p}} \geq 1$. If $d_{\mathfrak{p}} = 1$, then all the \mathfrak{p} -supersingular locus is \mathfrak{p} -superspecial, and there is only one stratum $W'_{\mathfrak{S}}(\mathfrak{a})$. So the statement is clear.

Assume now $d_{\mathfrak{p}} > 1$. Choose a basic arc δ of \mathfrak{a} . Let τ (resp. τ^-) be the right (resp. left) node of δ , and \mathfrak{a}_{δ} be the semi-meander obtained from \mathfrak{a} by removing the arc δ . Then one has a commutative

diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccc}
 W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}) & \longrightarrow & Z'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi'_\tau \\
 W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\tau}(\mathfrak{a}_\delta) & \longrightarrow & Z'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\tau}(\mathfrak{a}_\delta) & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\tau}, K'^p)_{k_0} \\
 \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi'_{\mathfrak{a}_\delta} & & \\
 \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\mathfrak{a}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau(\mathfrak{a})} & \longrightarrow & \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\mathfrak{a}}, K'^p)_{k_0} & & \\
 \downarrow \cong & & & & \\
 \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\mathfrak{a}^*}, K'^p)_{k_0} & & & &
 \end{array}$$

where all the squares are cartesian; all horizontal maps are closed immersions; and all vertical arrows are iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -bundles. By the induction hypothesis, the \mathfrak{p} -superspecial locus $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\tau}, K'^p)_{k_0}^{\mathfrak{p}-\text{sp}}$ is contained in $W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\tau}(\mathfrak{a}_\delta)$ and the restriction of $\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}_\delta}$ induces an isomorphism

$$(3.5.3) \quad \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\tau}, K'^p)_{k_0}^{\mathfrak{p}-\text{sp}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\mathfrak{a}^*}, K'^p)_{k_0}.$$

Now by Proposition 3.2, the restriction of π'_τ induces an isomorphism

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \{\tau, \tau^-\}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\tau}, K'^p)_{k_0}$$

compatible with the construction of Goren–Oort divisors. Thus, π'_τ sends $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}^{\mathfrak{p}-\text{sp}}$ isomorphically to $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\tau}, K'^p)_{k_0}^{\mathfrak{p}-\text{sp}}$. The statement now follows immediately by composing with the isomorphism (3.5.3). \square

We study now the total supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$, that is, the maximal closed subset where the universal p -divisible group $\mathcal{A}'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}[p^\infty]$ is supersingular. Put

$$\mathfrak{B}_{\mathfrak{S}} = \{\mathfrak{a} = (\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}})_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}} \mid \mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)\},$$

and $r = \sum_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}} \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor$. We attach to each \mathfrak{a} an r -dimensional closed subvariety $W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}) \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}_{K'}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}})_{k_0}$ as follows. We write $\Sigma_{\mathfrak{p}} = \{\mathfrak{p}_1, \dots, \mathfrak{p}_m\}$, that is, we choose an order for the elements of $\Sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}$. We put $\mathfrak{S}_1 = \mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}}$, $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_1^* = \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}}^*$ (see (3.5.1)); put inductively $\mathfrak{S}_{i+1} = (\mathfrak{S}_i)_{\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_{i+1}}}$, $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{i+1}^* = (\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_i^*)_{\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_{i+1}}}$ for $1 \leq i \leq m-1$; and finally put $\mathfrak{S}_{\mathfrak{a}} = \mathfrak{S}_m$, $\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_{\mathfrak{a}}^* = \tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_m^*$. For $\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}_1}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}_1}/2 \rfloor)$, we have constructed a $\lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}_1}/2 \rfloor$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration

$$\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}}|_{W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1})} : W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_1^*}, K'^p)_{k_0}.$$

Now, applying the construction to $\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathfrak{S}_{\infty/\mathfrak{p}_2}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}_2}/2 \rfloor)$ and $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_1^*}, K'^p)_{k_0}$, we have a closed subvariety $W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_1^*}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2}) \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_1^*}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ of codimension $\lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}_2}/2 \rfloor$. We put

$$W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}, \mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2}) := (\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}})^{-1}(W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_1^*}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2})).$$

Then there exists a canonical projection

$$\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}, \mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2}} : W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}, \mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2}) \xrightarrow{\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}}|_{W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_1}, \mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2})}} W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_1^*}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2}) \xrightarrow{\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2}}|_{W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_1^*}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}_2})}} \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_2^*}, K'^p)_{k_0}.$$

Repeating this construction, we finally get a closed subvariety $W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}) \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ of codimension $\sum_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma} \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor$ together with a canonical projection

$$\pi'_{\mathfrak{a}} : W'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathfrak{S}}_\mathfrak{a}^*}, K'^p)_{k_0}.$$

Note that the underlying set $\mathbf{S}_{\underline{a}}^*$ of $\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\underline{a}}^*$ is independent of $\underline{a} \in \mathfrak{B}_{\mathbf{S}}$, namely all of them are equal to

$$(3.5.4) \quad \mathbf{S}_{\max} := \Sigma_{\infty} \cup \{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p \mid g_{\mathfrak{p}} := [F_{\mathfrak{p}} : \mathbf{Q}_p] \text{ is odd}\}.$$

Thus $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\underline{a}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ is a Shimura variety of dimension 0, and $\pi'_{\underline{a}}$ is by construction an r -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration over $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\underline{a}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. We note that $W'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\underline{a})$ does not depend on the order $\mathfrak{p}_1, \dots, \mathfrak{p}_m$ of the places of F above p .

Theorem 3.6. *The total supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$ is given by*

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}^{\text{ss}} := \bigcup_{\underline{a} \in \mathfrak{B}_{\mathbf{S}}} W'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\underline{a}),$$

where each $W'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\underline{a})$ is a $\sum_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p} \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration over some discrete Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}_{\underline{a}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}$. In particular, $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0}^{\text{ss}}$ is proper and of equidimension $\sum_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p} \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor$.

Proof. This follows immediately from Theorem 3.3 by induction on the number of p -adic places $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$ such that $d_{\mathfrak{p}} \neq 0$. \square

Remark 3.7. It is clear that the total supersingular locus is the intersection of all \mathfrak{p} -supersingular loci for $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$. It follows that

$$W'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\underline{a}) = \bigcap_{\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p} W'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\mathfrak{a}_{\mathfrak{p}}),$$

and the intersection is transversal.

3.6. Applications to quaternionic Shimura varieties. As in [TX16, TX14], the construction of Goren–Oort divisors can be transferred to $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p)_{k_0} := \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p) \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{F_{\mathbf{S}}, \wp}} k_0$ for a sufficiently small open compact subgroup $K^p \subseteq G_{\mathbf{S}}(\mathbf{A}^{\infty, p})$.

Consider first the connected Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\circ} := \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{\mathbf{Z}_p^{\text{ur}}}^{\circ} \otimes_{\mathbf{Z}_p^{\text{ur}}} \mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}$. For each $\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty}$, the Goren–Oort divisor $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}})_{k_0, \tau} = \varprojlim_{K'^p} \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}, K'^p)_{k_0, \tau}$ induces a divisor $\mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}, \tau}^{\circ} \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\circ}$. By the canonical isomorphism

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\circ} \cong \mathbf{Sh}(G'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\circ},$$

from §2.6 and Deligne’s recipe of recovering $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}$ from $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\circ}$ [TX16, Corollary 2.13], the divisor $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}, \tau}^{\circ}$ induces a divisor $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}, \tau} \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}$. By Galois descent, one gets a divisor $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{k_0, \tau} \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{k_0}$, which is stable under prime-to- p Hecke translations. Finally, we define the Goren–Oort divisors on $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p)_{k_0}$ as the image of Goren–Oort divisors on $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p)_{k_0}$ via the natural projection $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}})_{k_0} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p)_{k_0}$.

Proposition 3.8. *Take $\tau \in \Sigma_{\infty/p}$ for some $\mathfrak{p} \in \Sigma_p$. Then there exists a \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration*

$$\pi_{\tau} : \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p)_{k_0, \tau} \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\tau}}, K^p)_{k_0},$$

where \mathbf{S}_{τ} was defined in (3.3.1).

Proof. This follows immediately from Proposition 3.2. \square

Now, the construction of Goren–Oort cycles can be transferred to the quaternionic Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p)_{k_0}$. For a periodic semi-meander $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\mathbf{S}_{\infty/p}, \lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor)$, we construct inductively in the same way as $Z'_{\tilde{\mathbf{S}}}(\mathfrak{a})$ a closed subvariety $Z_{\mathbf{S}}(\mathfrak{a}) \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p)_{k_0}$ equipped with a $\lfloor d_{\mathfrak{p}}/2 \rfloor$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration

$$\pi_{\mathfrak{a}} : Z_{\mathbf{S}}(\mathfrak{a}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{k_0}.$$

We define similarly

$$(3.6.1) \quad W_{\mathbf{S}}(\mathbf{a}) = \begin{cases} Z_{\mathbf{S}}(\mathbf{a}) & \text{if } d_{\mathbf{p}} \text{ is even,} \\ \pi_{\mathbf{a}}^{-1}(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\mathbf{a}}}, K^p)_{\tau(\mathbf{a})}) & \text{if } d_{\mathbf{p}} \text{ is odd,} \end{cases}$$

where $\tau(\mathbf{a}) \in \Sigma_{\infty/\mathbf{p}}$ is the end point of the unique semi-line of \mathbf{a} . We have similarly an $\lfloor d_{\mathbf{p}}/2 \rfloor$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration

$$\pi_{\mathbf{a}}|_{W_{\mathbf{S}}(\mathbf{a})} : W_{\mathbf{S}}(\mathbf{a}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{p})}, K^p)_{k_0}$$

where $\mathbf{S}(\mathbf{p}) = \mathbf{S}_{\mathbf{a}}^*$ is defined in (3.5.2). Note that the target of $\pi_{\mathbf{a}}$ is independent of \mathbf{a} , but $W_{\mathbf{S}}(\mathbf{a})$ depends on \mathbf{a} .

Similarly, for $\underline{\mathbf{a}} = (\mathbf{a}_{\mathbf{p}})_{\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p} \in \mathfrak{B}_{\mathbf{S}}$, we can define a closed subvariety $W_{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{\mathbf{a}}) \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p)_{k_0}$ of dimension $r = \sum_{\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p} \lfloor d_{\mathbf{p}}/2 \rfloor$ together with an r -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration

$$\pi_{\underline{\mathbf{a}}} : W_{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{\mathbf{a}}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{k_0},$$

where \mathbf{S}_{\max} was defined in (3.5.4).

Remark 3.9. Generalizing a construction in [Car86], one can construct a canonical p -divisible group \mathbf{G} over $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}}, K^p)$ of dimension $\#(\Sigma_{\infty} - \mathbf{S})$ and height $\sum_{\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p} d_{\mathbf{p}}(\mathbf{S})g_{\mathbf{p}}$. Moreover, one can recover the subscheme $W_{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{\mathbf{a}})$ purely using invariants of \mathbf{G} . In particular, $W_{\mathbf{S}}(\underline{\mathbf{a}})$ is independent of the choice of the auxiliary data from §2.2.

3.7. Totally indefinite quaternionic Shimura varieties. We consider the case $\mathbf{S} = \emptyset$, and we write $G = G_{\emptyset}$ and $G' = G'_{\emptyset}$ for simplicity as usual. Recall that $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ classifies tuples $(A, \iota, \bar{\lambda}, \bar{\alpha}_{K^p})$ as defined in §2.5. Even though it is only a coarse moduli space, there still exists a universal abelian scheme \mathcal{A} over $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ (See Remark 2.9(1)).

Definition 3.10. Put $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p} = \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p) \otimes \mathbf{F}_p$.

- (1) For each $\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p$, we define the \mathbf{p} -supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$ as the maximal closed subvariety of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$ where the universal \mathbf{p} -divisible group $\mathcal{A}[\mathbf{p}^{\infty}]$ is supersingular.
- (2) We define the *total supersingular locus* of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$ as the intersection of the \mathbf{p} -supersingular locus for all $\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p$.

Theorem 3.11. For $\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p$, put $g_{\mathbf{p}} = [F_{\mathbf{p}} : \mathbf{Q}_p]$. Then the \mathbf{p} -supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$, after base change to k_0 , is

$$\bigcup_{\mathbf{a} \in \mathfrak{B}(\emptyset_{\infty/\mathbf{p}}, \lfloor g_{\mathbf{p}}/2 \rfloor)} W_{\emptyset}(\mathbf{a}),$$

where $\mathfrak{B}(\emptyset_{\infty/\mathbf{p}}, \lfloor g_{\mathbf{p}}/2 \rfloor)$ is the set of periodic semi-meanders of $g_{\mathbf{p}}$ -nodes and $\lfloor g_{\mathbf{p}}/2 \rfloor$ -arcs, and each $W_{\emptyset}(\mathbf{a})$ is defined in (3.6.1) and it is a $\lfloor g_{\mathbf{p}}/2 \rfloor$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration over $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset(\mathbf{p})}, K^p)_{k_0}$.

Proof. According to the discussion of §2.6, the definition of the \mathbf{p} -supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$ using the universal family \mathcal{A} coincides with the one induced the \mathbf{p} -supersingular locus of the unitary Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G', K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$. The statement then follows from Theorem 3.3. \square

Theorem 3.12. Denote $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{ss}}$ the total supersingular locus of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$. Then we have

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{ss}} \otimes k_0 = \bigcup_{\underline{\mathbf{a}} \in \mathfrak{B}_{\emptyset}} W_{\emptyset}(\underline{\mathbf{a}}),$$

where \mathfrak{B}_{\emptyset} is the set of tuples $(\mathbf{a}_{\mathbf{p}})_{\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p}$ with $\mathbf{a}_{\mathbf{p}} \in \mathfrak{B}(\emptyset_{\infty/\mathbf{p}}, \lfloor g_{\mathbf{p}}/2 \rfloor)$. Each $W_{\emptyset}(\underline{\mathbf{a}})$ is a $(\sum_{\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p} \lfloor g_{\mathbf{p}}/2 \rfloor)$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration over $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{k_0}$, equivariant under prime-to- p Hecke correspondences, where \mathbf{S}_{\max} was defined in (3.5.4). In particular, $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{ss}}$ is proper and of equidimension $\sum_{\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p} \lfloor g_{\mathbf{p}}/2 \rfloor$.

Proof. This follows from Theorem 3.11 by induction on the number of p -adic places $\mathbf{p} \in \Sigma_p$. \square

Remark 3.13. The above theorem is known in the following cases.

- (1) If p is inert in F of degree 2 and B is the matrix algebra, then the theorem was first proved in [BG99].
- (2) If p is inert in F of degree 4 and B is the matrix algebra, then the results was due to [Yu03].
- (3) Assume that p is inert in F of even degree. Then the strata $W_\emptyset(\underline{\mathfrak{a}})$ have already been constructed in [TX14], and the authors proved there that, under certain genericity conditions on the Satake parameters of a fixed automorphic cuspidal representation π , the cycles $W_\emptyset(\underline{\mathfrak{a}})$ give all the π -isotypic Tate cycles on the quaternionic Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$.

We define an action of $\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{F}_p} = \text{Gal}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}/\mathbf{F}_p)$ on the set \mathfrak{B}_\emptyset as follows. For each periodic semi-meander $\mathfrak{a}_p \in \mathfrak{B}(\emptyset_{\infty/p}, [g_p/2])$, let $\sigma(\mathfrak{a}_p)$ be the Frobenius translate of \mathfrak{a}_p , that is, there is an arc in $\sigma(\mathfrak{a}_p)$ linking two nodes x, y if and only if there is an arc in \mathfrak{a}_p linking $\sigma^{-1}(x), \sigma^{-1}(y)$. For $\underline{\mathfrak{a}} = (\mathfrak{a}_p)_p$, we put $\sigma(\underline{\mathfrak{a}}) = (\sigma(\mathfrak{a}_p))_{p \in \Sigma_p}$. Then the action of $\text{Gal}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}/\mathbf{F}_p)$ on $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}$ sends the stratum $W_\emptyset(\underline{\mathfrak{a}})$ to $W_\emptyset(\sigma(\underline{\mathfrak{a}}))$.

Definition 3.14. We define the *superspecial locus* $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}}$ of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$ to be the maximal closed subset where the universal p -divisible group $\mathcal{A}[p^\infty]$ is superspecial.

Using the universal family of abelian varieties \mathcal{A} over $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$, one can define, for each $\tau \in \Sigma_\infty$, a partial Hasse invariant h_τ on $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{k_0}$ similarly to (3.2.1). We can also define the Goren–Oort divisor $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{k_0, \tau}$ of $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{k_0}$ as being the vanishing locus of h_τ . By the relation of universal abelian schemes (2.6.1), this definition coincides with the one defined by transferring to the unitary Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G', K'^p)_{k_0}$. It is easy to see that

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}} \otimes k_0 = \bigcap_{\tau \in \Sigma_\infty} \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{k_0, \tau}.$$

Theorem 3.15. *Assume that g_p is odd for every $p \in \Sigma_p$. For each $\underline{\mathfrak{a}} \in \mathfrak{B}_\emptyset$ as in Theorem 3.12, $W_\emptyset(\underline{\mathfrak{a}})$ contains the superspecial locus $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}} \otimes k_0$, and the morphism $\pi_{\underline{\mathfrak{a}}}: W_\emptyset(\underline{\mathfrak{a}}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{k_0}$ induces an isomorphism*

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}} \otimes k_0 \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{k_0}$$

compatible with prime-to- p Hecke correspondences.

Proof. This follows from Proposition 3.5. □

In what follows, we will identify $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}} \otimes k_0$ and $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{k_0}$ through some fixed $\underline{\mathfrak{a}}$. Thus $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{k_0}$ descends to an \mathbf{F}_p -scheme, denoted by $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$ by abuse of notation. In fact, one can show that the \mathbf{F}_p -structure on $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{k_0}$ does not depend on the choice of $\underline{\mathfrak{a}}$.

4. ARITHMETIC LEVEL RAISING

In this chapter, we state and prove the arithmetic level raising result. We suppose that $g = [F : \mathbf{Q}]$ is odd. Fix an irreducible cuspidal automorphic representation Π of $\text{GL}_2(\mathbf{A}_F)$ of parallel weight 2 defined over a number field \mathbf{E} .

4.1. Statement of arithmetic level raising. Let B be a totally indefinite quaternion algebra over F , and put $G = \text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} B^\times$. Let K be a neat open compact subgroup of $G(\mathbf{A}^\infty)$ (Definition 2.6). Then we have the Shimura variety $\text{Sh}(G, K)$ defined over \mathbf{Q} whose \mathbf{C} -points are given by

$$\text{Sh}(G, K)(\mathbf{C}) = G(\mathbf{Q}) \backslash (\mathfrak{H}^\pm)^{\Sigma_\infty} \times G(\mathbf{A}^\infty) / K.$$

Let \mathbf{R} be a finite set of places³ of F away from which Π is unramified and K is hyperspecial maximal. Let $\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R}}$ be the Hecke monoid away from \mathbf{R} [Liu, Notation 3.1] (that is, the commutative monoid generated by $T_{\mathfrak{q}}, S_{\mathfrak{q}}, S_{\mathfrak{q}}^{-1}$ with the relation $S_{\mathfrak{q}}S_{\mathfrak{q}}^{-1} = 1$ for all primes $\mathfrak{q} \notin \mathbf{R}$). Then Π induces a homomorphism

$$\phi_{\Pi}^{\mathbf{R}}: \mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R}}] \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}$$

by its Hecke eigenvalues. For every prime λ of \mathbf{E} , we have an attached Galois representation

$$(4.1.1) \quad \rho_{\Pi, \lambda}: \mathbf{G}_F = \text{Gal}(F^{\text{ac}}/F) \rightarrow \text{GL}_2(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}, \lambda})$$

which is unramified outside $\mathbf{R} \cup \mathbf{R}_{\lambda}$, where \mathbf{R}_{λ} denotes the subset of all places of F with the same residue characteristic as λ . The Galois representation $\rho_{\Pi, \lambda}$ is normalized so that if $\sigma_{\mathfrak{q}}$ denotes an *arithmetic* Frobenius element at \mathfrak{q} for a place $\mathfrak{q} \notin \mathbf{R} \cup \mathbf{R}_{\lambda}$, then the characteristic polynomial of $\rho_{\Pi, \lambda}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{q}})$ is given by

$$X^2 - \phi_{\Pi}^{\mathbf{R}}(T_{\mathfrak{q}})X + N_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathfrak{q})\phi_{\Pi}^{\mathbf{R}}(S_{\mathfrak{q}}).$$

Let $\mathfrak{m}_{\Pi, \lambda}^{\mathbf{R}}$ be the kernel of the composite map $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R}}] \xrightarrow{\phi_{\Pi}^{\mathbf{R}}} \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}} \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda$. From now on, we suppose that the following is satisfied.

Assumption 4.1. Let ℓ be the underlying rational prime of λ . Then we assume that

- (1) ℓ is coprime to \mathbf{R} , $\text{disc } F$, and the cardinality of $F^{\times} \backslash \mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, \times} / (\mathbf{A}_F^{\infty, \times} \cap K)$;
- (2) $\ell \geq g + 2$;
- (3) the representation $\bar{\rho}_{\Pi, \lambda} := \rho_{\Pi, \lambda} \pmod{\lambda}$ satisfies the condition $(\mathbf{LI}_{\text{Ind } \bar{\rho}_{\Pi, \lambda}})$ in [Dim05, Proposition 0.1];
- (4) $H^g(\text{Sh}(G, K)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda) / \mathfrak{m}_{\Pi, \lambda}^{\mathbf{R}}$ has dimension $8 \dim(\Pi_B^{\infty})^K$ over $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda$, where Π_B is the automorphic representation of $G(\mathbf{A})$ whose Jacquet–Langlands transfer to $\text{GL}_2(\mathbf{A}_F)$ is Π .

Remark 4.2. We have following remarks concerning Assumption 4.1.

- (1) Assumption 4.1(3) implies that $\bar{\rho}_{\Pi, \lambda}$ is absolutely irreducible.
- (2) If Π is not dihedral and not isomorphic to a twist by a character of any of its internal conjugates, then Assumption 4.1(3) holds for all but finitely many λ by [Dim05, Proposition 0.1]. In particular, for such a Π , the entire Assumption 4.1 holds for all but finitely many λ .
- (3) In general, the dimension of $H^g(\text{Sh}(G, K)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda) / \mathfrak{m}_{\Pi, \lambda}^{\mathbf{R}}$ is at least $8 \dim_E(\Pi^{\infty})^K$ over $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda$.

Let p be a rational prime inert in F , coprime to $\mathbf{R} \cup \{2, \ell\}$. Denote by \mathfrak{p} the unique prime of F above p . To ease notation, we put

$$\phi = \phi_{\Pi}^{\mathbf{R} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\}}: \mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\}}] \rightarrow \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}, \quad \mathfrak{m} = \mathfrak{m}_{\Pi, \lambda}^{\mathbf{R} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\}} \subseteq \mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\}}].$$

For any $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R} \cup \{\mathfrak{p}\}}]$ -module M , we denote by $M_{\mathfrak{m}}$ its localization at \mathfrak{m} . Write $K = K_p K^p$ where K_p is a hyperspecial maximal subgroup of $G(\mathbf{Q}_p)$ as $p \notin \mathbf{R}$. We have the integral model $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ over \mathbf{Z}_p defined in §2.5 for the Shimura variety $\text{Sh}(G, K^p) = \text{Sh}(G, K)$. Let $\mathfrak{B} := \mathfrak{B}(\emptyset, (g-1)/2)$ be the set of periodic semi-meanders attached to $\mathbf{S} = \emptyset$ with g -nodes and $(g-1)/2$ -arcs. Then Theorem 3.12 asserts in this case that

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{ss}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}} = \bigcup_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} W(\mathfrak{a}),$$

where each $W(\mathfrak{a}) = W_{\emptyset}(\mathfrak{a})$ is equipped with a $(g-1)/2$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibration

$$\pi_{\mathfrak{a}}: W(\mathfrak{a}) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}}.$$

³The meaning of \mathbf{R} changes from here; in particular, it contains the ramification set of B , which it previously stands for.

We note that k_0 defined in Subsection 3.1 is $\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}$ in the current case. Let

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}} \subseteq \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$$

be the superspecial locus as in Definition 3.14. By Theorem 3.15, each $W(\mathfrak{a})$ for $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}$ contains $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}$, and the morphism $\pi_{\mathfrak{a}}$ induces an isomorphism

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}^{\text{SP}} \xrightarrow{\sim} \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}$$

which is equivariant under prime-to- p Hecke correspondences, and independent of \mathfrak{a} .

Consider the set $\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$, equipped with the diagonal action by $\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{F}_p}$. The Hecke monoid $\mathbb{T}^{\text{RU}\{p\}}$ acts through the second factor. We have a Chow cycle class map

$$(4.1.2) \quad \Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathbf{Z}) \rightarrow \text{CH}^{(g+1)/2}(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}))$$

sending a function f on $\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$ to the Chow class of $\sum_{\mathfrak{a}, s} f(\mathfrak{a}, s) \pi_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1}(s)$.

Lemma 4.3. *The map (4.1.2) is equivariant under both $\mathbb{T}^{\text{RU}\{p\}}$ and $\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{F}_p}$.*

Proof. The equivariance of $\pi_{\mathfrak{a}}$ under prime-to- p Hecke correspondences follows from Theorem 3.15. The equivariance under $\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{F}_p}$ follows from the definition of $\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{F}_p}$ on $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}})$. \square

Lemma 4.4. *Under the notation above, the following statements hold:*

- (1) *There exists a canonical isomorphism $\text{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}})_{\mathfrak{m}} \rightarrow \text{H}^g(\text{Sh}(G, K)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}})_{\mathfrak{m}}$ compatible with Galois actions. In particular, we have a canonical isomorphism*

$$\text{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^h}, \text{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}/\lambda((g+1)/2)})_{\mathfrak{m}}) \cong \text{H}_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_{p^h}, \text{H}^g(\text{Sh}(G, K)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}/\lambda((g+1)/2)})_{\mathfrak{m}})$$

for every integer $h \geq 1$;

- (2) $\text{H}^i(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}})_{\mathfrak{m}} = 0$ unless $i = g$;
- (3) $\text{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}})_{\mathfrak{m}}$ is a finite free $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}$ -module.

Proof. By [LS, Corollary 4.6], no matter whether the Shimura variety $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)$ is proper over $\mathbf{Z}_{(p)}$, the canonical maps

$$\text{H}^i(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{H}^i(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}) \xleftarrow{\sim} \text{H}^i(\text{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}})$$

for all $i \geq 0$ are isomorphisms compatible with Hecke and Galois actions. One gets thus Statement (1) by localizing the Hecke action at \mathfrak{m} . Statements (2) and (3) then follow from Assumption 4.1(3) and [Dim05, Theorem B]. \square

To ease notation, put $\mathbf{G}' = \text{Gal}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}/\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}})$. Lemma 4.3 induces the following map

$$(4.1.3) \quad \Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathbf{Z})^{\mathbf{G}'} \rightarrow \text{CH}^{(g+1)/2}(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}})$$

which is equivariant under both $\mathbb{T}^{\text{RU}\{p\}}$ and $\text{Gal}(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}/\mathbf{F}_p)$. On the other hand, one has a cycle class map

$$\text{CH}^{(g+1)/2}(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}}) \rightarrow \text{H}^{g+1}(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}((g+1)/2)).$$

However, by the Hochschild–Serre spectral sequence and Lemma 4.4(1), we have a canonical isomorphism

$$\text{H}^{g+1}(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}} \cong \text{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \text{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}}).$$

Therefore, composing with (the localization of) (4.1.3) and modulo λ , we obtain a morphism

$$(4.1.4) \quad \Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}: \Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}/\lambda})_{\mathfrak{m}}^{\mathbf{G}'} \rightarrow \text{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \text{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}/\lambda((g+1)/2)})_{\mathfrak{m}}),$$

called the *unramified level raising map at \mathfrak{m}* . It is equivariant under the action of $\text{Gal}(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}/\mathbf{F}_p)$.

Definition 4.5. We say that a rational prime p is a λ -level raising prime (with respect to Π, B, K, \mathbb{R}) if

- (L1): p is inert in F , and coprime to $\mathbb{R} \cup \{2, \ell\}$;
- (L2): $\ell \nmid \prod_{i=1}^g (p^{2g^i} - 1)$;
- (L3): $\phi_{\Pi}^{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{T}_p)^2 \equiv (p^g + 1)^2 \pmod{\lambda}$ and $\phi_{\Pi}^{\mathbb{R}}(\mathbb{S}_p) \equiv 1 \pmod{\lambda}$.

Remark 4.6. We have the following remarks concerning level raising primes.

- (1) By a similar argument of [Liu, Lemma 4.11], one can show there are infinitely many λ -level raising primes with positive density, as long as there exist rational primes inert in F and λ satisfies Assumption 4.1.

- (2) By the Eichler–Shimura congruence relation, Definition 4.5(L3) is equivalent to saying that

$$\bar{\rho}_{\Pi, \lambda}(\sigma_p) \text{ is conjugate to } \pm \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & p^g \end{pmatrix}.$$

- (3) By the Eichler–Shimura congruence relation and the Chebotarev’s density theorem, we know that the canonical map

$$H^g(\mathrm{Sh}(G, K)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda)/\mathfrak{m} \rightarrow H^g(\mathrm{Sh}(G, K)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda)/\mathfrak{m}_{\Pi, \lambda}^{\mathbb{R}}$$

is an isomorphism of $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda[\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{Q}}]$ -modules.

Theorem 4.7 (Arithmetic level raising). *Let λ be a prime of $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}$ such that Assumption 4.1 is satisfied. Let p be a λ -level raising prime. Then G' acts trivially on $\Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}$; and the induced map*

$$(4.1.5) \quad \Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda)/\mathfrak{m} \rightarrow H^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, H^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda((g+1)/2))/\mathfrak{m})$$

is surjective.

4.2. Proof of arithmetic level raising. This section is devoted to the proof of Theorem 4.7. We assume that we are not in the case where $F = \mathbf{Q}$ and B is the matrix algebra, since this is already known by Ribet.

For $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}$, denote $\tau(\mathfrak{a}) \in \Sigma_{\infty}$ the end point of the unique semi-line in \mathfrak{a} . By the construction in §3.6, for each $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}$, the stratum $W(\mathfrak{a})$ fits into the following commutative diagram

$$(4.2.1) \quad \begin{array}{ccccc} W(\mathfrak{a}) & \hookrightarrow & Z_{\emptyset}(\mathfrak{a}) & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_{\mathfrak{a}} & & \\ \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}, \tau(\mathfrak{a})}} & \hookrightarrow & \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}} & & \\ \downarrow \cong & & & & \\ \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}} & & & & \end{array}$$

where the square is Cartesian. Note that $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)$ is a *proper* Shimura curve over $\mathcal{O}_{F, p}$ (with F regarded as a subfield of \mathbf{Q}^{ac} determined by \mathfrak{a}), and $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}, \tau(\mathfrak{a})}} \cong \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}}$ is exactly its “supersingular” locus. Similarly to (4.1.3), we have a Chow class map

$$\Gamma(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}), \mathbf{Z}) \rightarrow \mathrm{CH}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}),$$

which induces an unramified level raising map for the Shimura curve $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)$:

$$(4.2.2) \quad \Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}(\mathfrak{a}): \Gamma(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}^{G'} \rightarrow H^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, H^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda(1))_{\mathfrak{m}}).$$

The following is an analogue of Theorem 4.7 for Shimura curves.

Proposition 4.8. *Under the hypothesis of Theorem 4.7, the map $\Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}(\mathfrak{a})$ is surjective.*

To prove this Proposition, we need some preparation. Let $Iw_p \subseteq G_{\theta_a}(\mathbf{Q}_p) \cong \mathrm{GL}_2(F_p)$ be the standard Iwahoric subgroup, and $\mathrm{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p Iw_p)$ be the Shimura curve attached to G_{θ_a} of level $K^p Iw_p$. By [Car86], $\mathrm{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p Iw_p)$ admits an integral model $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p Iw_p)$ over $\mathcal{O}_{F,p}$ with semi-stable reduction. The special fiber $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p Iw_p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$ consists of two copies of $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p Iw_p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$ cutting transversally at supersingular points. There are two natural degeneracy maps

$$\pi_1, \pi_2: \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p Iw_p) \rightarrow \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p).$$

Recall the following generalization of Ihara's Lemma to Shimura curves over totally real fields.

Lemma 4.9 ([Che, Theorem 1.2]). *Let \mathfrak{m} be a non-Eisenstein maximal ideal of the Hecke algebra $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathrm{R}\cup\{p\}}]$. Then the canonical map*

$$\pi_1^* + \pi_2^*: \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}^{\oplus 2} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p Iw_p)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}$$

is injective.

Proof of Proposition 4.8. To simplify notation, let us put $X = \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p)$ viewed as a proper smooth scheme over $\mathcal{O}_{F,p}$, the ‘‘supersingular’’ locus

$$X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}}^{\mathrm{SS}} := \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}, \tau_a}} \cong \mathbf{Sh}(G_{S_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}},$$

and $X_0(p) = \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_a}, K^p Iw_p)$. We put also $k_\lambda = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda$. Consider the canonical short exact sequence

$$\mathrm{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda) \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}^{\mathrm{SS}}, k_\lambda) \rightarrow \mathrm{H}_c^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}^{\mathrm{ord}}, k_\lambda) \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda) \rightarrow 0$$

equivariant under the action of $\mathrm{G}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}/\mathbf{F}_{p^g}) \times \mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathrm{R}\cup\{p\}}]$, where $X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}^{\mathrm{ord}} = X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}} - X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}^{\mathrm{SS}}$ is the ‘‘ordinary’’ locus. The first term vanishes after localizing at \mathfrak{m} by Assumption 4.1(3). Taking Galois cohomology $\mathrm{H}^i(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, -)$, one deduces a boundary map

$$\Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}^*(\mathfrak{a}): \mathrm{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}^{\mathrm{G}'} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \mathrm{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}^{\mathrm{SS}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}).$$

By the Poincaré duality and the duality of Galois cohomology over finite fields, it is easy to see that $\Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}^*(\mathfrak{a})$ is identified with the dual map of $\Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}(\mathfrak{a})$. Therefore, to finish the proof of Proposition 4.8, it suffices to show that $\Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}^*(\mathfrak{a})$ is injective.

Recall that $X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$ consists of two copies of $X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$. Let $i_1: X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}} \rightarrow X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$ be the copy such that $\pi_1 \circ i_1$ is the identity, and $i_2: X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}} \rightarrow X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$ be the one such that $\pi_2 \circ i_2$ is the identity. It is well known that $\pi_2 \circ i_1$ is the Frobenius endomorphism of $X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$ relative to \mathbf{F}_{p^g} , and $\pi_1 \circ i_2$ is the Frobenius endomorphism of $X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$ relative to \mathbf{F}_{p^g} composed with the Hecke action S_p^{-1} . Consider the normalization $\delta: \tilde{X}_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}} = X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}} \amalg X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}} \rightarrow X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$. Then one has an exact sequence of étale sheaves on $X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$

$$0 \rightarrow k_\lambda \rightarrow \delta_* k_\lambda \rightarrow i_*^{\mathrm{SS}} k_\lambda \rightarrow 0,$$

where $i^{\mathrm{SS}}: X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}^{\mathrm{SS}} \rightarrow X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$ denotes the closed immersion of the singular locus of $X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}$, and the second map $\delta_* k_\lambda \rightarrow i_*^{\mathrm{SS}} k_\lambda$ is given as follows: If $x \in X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}^{\mathrm{SS}}(\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}})$ is a supersingular geometric point with preimage $\delta^{-1}(x) = (x_1, x_2)$ with $x_j \in i_j(X(\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}))$ for $j = 1, 2$, then $(\delta_* k_\lambda)_x = k_{\lambda, x_1} \oplus k_{\lambda, x_2} \rightarrow i_*^{\mathrm{SS}} k_\lambda$ is given by $(a, b) \mapsto a - b$. By the functoriality of cohomology, we get

$$(4.2.3) \quad 0 = \mathrm{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}^{\mathrm{SS}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^1(X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \xrightarrow{(i_1^*, i_2^*)} \mathrm{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}^{\oplus 2} \rightarrow 0.$$

Consider the map

$$(4.2.4) \quad \pi_1^* + \pi_2^*: \mathrm{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}^{\oplus 2} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^1(X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}$$

induced by the two degeneracy maps $\pi_1, \pi_2: X_0(p) \rightarrow X$. If Fr_p denotes the action on $\mathrm{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_{p^g}}, k_\lambda)$ induced by the Frobenius endomorphism relative to \mathbf{F}_{p^g} , then $\mathrm{Fr}_p = \sigma_p^{-1}$ and the composite map

$$\theta: \mathrm{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}^{\oplus 2} \xrightarrow{\pi_1^* + \pi_2^*} \mathrm{H}^1(X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \xrightarrow{(i_1^*, i_2^*)} \mathrm{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\mathrm{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}^{\oplus 2}$$

is given by the matrix $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \text{Fr}_p \\ \text{Fr}_p \text{S}_p^{-1} & 1 \end{pmatrix}$.

By Definition 4.5(L3), we know that the Hecke operator S_p acts trivially on $\text{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_m$ since the trivial action is the only lifting of the trivial action modulo \mathfrak{m} by Assumption 4.1(1). We see that $\ker \theta$ is identified with the image of the injective morphism

$$\text{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\text{Fr}_p^2=1} \xrightarrow{(-\text{Fr}_p, \text{Id})} \text{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\oplus 2}.$$

However, by Ihara's Lemma 4.9 and the proper base change, the map $\pi_1^* + \pi_2^*$ in (4.2.4) is injective. Thus, it induces an injection

$$\Phi^*: \text{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\text{Fr}_p^2=1} \cong \ker \theta \rightarrow \ker(i_1^*, i_2^*) \cong \text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m.$$

To finish the proof of Proposition 4.8, it suffices to show the following claims:

- (1) The action of Fr_p^2 on $\text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m$ is trivial so that the natural projection

$$\text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m \rightarrow \text{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m) \cong \text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m / (\text{Fr}_p^2 - 1)$$

is an isomorphism.

- (2) The morphism Φ^* is identified with $\Phi_m^*(\mathfrak{a})$.

Claim (1) follows from Assumption 4.1(1), Definition 4.5(L3) and the observation that Fr_p^2 acts through the Hecke translation by $(1, \dots, 1, p, 1, \dots)$ where p is placed at the prime \mathfrak{p} .

To prove Claim (2), consider the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc} & & \text{H}_c^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ord}}, k_\lambda)_m & \longrightarrow & \text{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\ & & \downarrow \pi_2^* - \pi_1^* \text{Fr}_p & & \downarrow \pi_2^* - \pi_1^* \text{Fr}_p & & \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & \text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m & \longrightarrow & \text{H}_c^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ord}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\oplus 2} & \longrightarrow & \text{H}^1(X_0(p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_m \longrightarrow 0 \\ & & \downarrow \alpha & & \parallel & & \downarrow (i_1^*, i_2^*) \\ 0 & \longrightarrow & \text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\oplus 2} & \longrightarrow & \text{H}_c^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ord}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\oplus 2} & \longrightarrow & \text{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\oplus 2} \longrightarrow 0, \end{array}$$

where α is the diagonal map, and horizontal rows are exact. Then the coboundary isomorphism $\ker(i_1^*, i_2^*) \cong \text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m$ given by (4.2.3) coincides with

$$\ker(i_1^*, i_2^*) \xrightarrow{\sim} \text{coker } \alpha \xleftarrow{\sim} \text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m,$$

where the first isomorphism is deduced from the commutative diagram above by the Snake Lemma, and the second is induced by the injection $\text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m \hookrightarrow \text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\oplus 2}$ to the second component.

Now take $x \in \text{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\text{Fr}_p^2=1} \cong \ker \theta$, and let $\tilde{x} \in \text{H}_c^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ord}}, k_\lambda)_m$ be a lift of x that is fixed by S_p . This is possible as the action of S_p on $\text{H}_c^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ord}}, k_\lambda)$ is semisimple. Then $\pi_2^*(\tilde{x}) - \pi_1^* \text{Fr}_p(\tilde{x}) \in \text{H}_c^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ord}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\oplus 2}$ is an element lifting $\pi_2^*(x) - \pi_1^* \text{Fr}_p(x) \in \ker(i_1^*, i_2^*)$, and $\pi_2^*(\tilde{x}) - \pi_1^* \text{Fr}_p(\tilde{x})$ lies actually in the image of $\text{H}^0(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m^{\oplus 2}$. Note that

$$\pi_2^*(\tilde{x}) - \pi_1^* \text{Fr}_p(\tilde{x}) = (\text{S}_p^{-1} \text{Fr}_p(\tilde{x}), \tilde{x}) - (\text{Fr}_p(\tilde{x}), \text{Fr}_p^2(\tilde{x})) = (0, (1 - \text{Fr}_p^2)(\tilde{x})).$$

Since $\Phi^*(x)$ is by definition the image of $\pi_2^*(\tilde{x}) - \pi_1^* \text{Fr}_p(\tilde{x})$ in $\text{coker } \Delta \cong \text{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}^{\text{ss}}, k_\lambda)_m$, we get $\Phi^*(x) = (1 - \text{Fr}_p^2)(\tilde{x})$. However, this is nothing but the image of $x \in \text{H}^1(X_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda)_m^{G'}$ via the coboundary map $\Phi_m^*(\mathfrak{a})$. This finishes the proof of claim, hence also the proof of Proposition 4.8. \square

Recall that we have, for each $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}$, an algebraic correspondence

$$\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}} \xleftarrow{\pi_{\mathfrak{a}}} Z_{\theta}(\mathfrak{a}) \xrightarrow{i_{\mathfrak{a}}} \mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}}.$$

Let Λ be $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}$, $\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}/\lambda}$ or $\mathbf{Q}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}$. We define $\text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{a}}(\Lambda)$ to be the composite map

$$\mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \xrightarrow{\pi_{\mathfrak{a}}^*} \mathrm{H}^1(W(\mathfrak{a})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \xrightarrow{\text{Gysin}} \mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda((g-1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}},$$

where the first map is an isomorphism since $\pi_{\mathfrak{a}}$ is a $(g-1)/2$ -th iterated \mathbb{P}^1 -fibrations, and the second map is the Gysin map induced by the closed immersion $i_{\mathfrak{a}}$. Taking sum, we get a map

$$\text{Gys}(\Lambda) := \sum_{\mathfrak{a}} \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{a}}(\Lambda): \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda((g-1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}}.$$

Proposition 4.10. *Under the assumption of Theorem 4.7,*

- (1) *the map $\text{Gys}(\Lambda)$ is injective for $\Lambda = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}/\lambda}, \mathbf{Q}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}$;*
- (2) *the induced map*

$$\text{Gys}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}/\lambda})/\mathfrak{m}: \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}/\lambda})/\mathfrak{m} \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}/\lambda}((g-1)/2))/\mathfrak{m}$$

is injective.

Before giving the proof of the proposition, we introduce some notation. Let $R_{\mathfrak{m}}$ be the set of all automorphic representations that contribute to $\mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda((g-1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}}$. Then it is the same as the set of all automorphic representations that contribute to $\mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}$ for every \mathfrak{a} by the Jacquet–Langlands correspondence. It is finite and contains Π . We may enlarge \mathbf{E} such that every automorphic representation $\Pi' \in R_{\mathfrak{m}}$ is defined over \mathbf{E} . Fix an embedding $\mathbf{E}_{\lambda} \hookrightarrow \mathbf{Q}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}$. Let $\alpha_{\Pi'}, \beta_{\Pi'} \in \mathbf{Z}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}$ be the eigenvalues of $\rho_{\Pi', \lambda}(\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}})$, where $\mathbf{Z}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}$ denotes the ring of integers of $\mathbf{Q}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}$. By Remark 4.6(2), we may assume that $\alpha_{\Pi'}$ and $\beta_{\Pi'}^2$ are respectively congruent to 1 and p^{2g} (modulo the maximal ideal of $\mathbf{Z}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}$); in particular, $\alpha_{\Pi'}/\beta_{\Pi'}$ is not congruent to any i -th root of unity for $1 \leq i \leq 2g$ by Definition 4.5(L2).

Proof of Proposition 4.10. Following [TX14], we consider the composite map

$$\text{Res}_{\mathfrak{a}}(\Lambda): \mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \xrightarrow{i_{\mathfrak{a}}^*} \mathrm{H}^g(W(\mathfrak{a})_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \xrightarrow{\pi_{\mathfrak{a}}} \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p), \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}$$

for each $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}$, and put

$$\text{Res}(\Lambda) := \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{a}}(\Lambda): \mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} \rightarrow \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}.$$

To prove that $\text{Gys}(\Lambda)$ is injective, it suffices to show that the composite map $\text{Res}(\Lambda) \circ \text{Gys}(\Lambda)$, which is an endomorphism of $\bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}$, is injective.

It follows from Lemma 4.4 that

$$(4.2.5) \quad \mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}} = \mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}})_{\mathfrak{m}} \otimes_{\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}} \Lambda,$$

and it is a finite free Λ -module. Note that we have

$$\mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \mathbf{Q}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}})_{\mathfrak{m}} = \bigoplus_{\Pi' \in R_{\mathfrak{m}}} \mathrm{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \mathbf{Q}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}})[\Pi'^{\infty}]$$

as modules over $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\text{R}\cup\{p\}}]$. Then it was shown in the proof of [TX14, Theorem 4.4(2)] that on each Π'^{∞} -isotypic component, $\det(\text{Res}(\Lambda) \circ \text{Gys}(\Lambda))$ is equal to a power of

$$\pm p^{\frac{g-1}{2} \cdot \binom{g}{(g-1)/2}} [(\alpha_{\Pi'} - \beta_{\Pi'})^2 / (\alpha_{\Pi'} \beta_{\Pi'})]^{t_{g, (g-1)/2}}$$

for $\Lambda = \mathbf{Q}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}$, where $t_{g, (g-1)/2} = \sum_{i=0}^{(g-1)/2-1} \binom{g}{i}$. By (4.2.5), it is clear that the same formula also holds for $\Lambda = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}$. Therefore, we see that $\det(\text{Res}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}) \circ \text{Gys}(\mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}_{\lambda}}))$ is non-vanishing modulo λ

by Definition 4.5(L2). It follows that $\text{Res}(\Lambda) \circ \text{Gys}(\Lambda)$ is an isomorphism for all choices of Λ , and hence $\text{Gys}(\Lambda)$ is injective and (1) follows.

The above argument also implies (2). \square

We can now finish the proof of Theorem 4.7. The assertion that G' acts trivially on $\Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda)_{\mathfrak{m}}$ has already been established as in the proof of Proposition 4.8. So now we focus on the surjectivity of $\Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}$ (4.1.4).

We write $k_{\lambda} = \mathcal{O}_{\mathbf{E}}/\lambda$ for simplicity as before. Via the canonical isomorphism

$$\Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)(\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}), k_{\lambda})_{\mathfrak{m}} \cong \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} \Gamma(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda})_{\mathfrak{m}},$$

the map (4.1.5) is identified with the composite map

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} \Gamma(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda})_{\mathfrak{m}} & \xrightarrow{\oplus_{\mathfrak{a}} \Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}(\mathfrak{a})/\mathfrak{m}} & \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} \mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}(1))_{\mathfrak{m}}) \\ & \searrow \Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}/\mathfrak{m} & \downarrow \text{Gys} \\ & & \mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \mathbb{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}}), \end{array}$$

where the vertical map Gys is simply $\mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, (\text{Gys}(k_{\lambda})/\mathfrak{m})(1))$. Here, we use the fact that the canonical maps

$$\mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}(1))_{\mathfrak{m}}) \rightarrow \mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}(1))_{\mathfrak{m}})$$

$$\mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \mathbb{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}}) \rightarrow \mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, \mathbb{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}})$$

are isomorphisms since $\mathbb{H}^2(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, -)$ vanishes. By Proposition 4.8, the map $\oplus_{\mathfrak{a}} \Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}(\mathfrak{a})/\mathfrak{m}$ is surjective. To prove that $\Phi_{\mathfrak{m}}/\mathfrak{m}$ is surjective, it suffices to show that so is Gys .

First, we have a description of $\mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}(1))_{\mathfrak{m}}$ in terms of $\bar{\rho}_{\Pi, \lambda}$, which is the residue representation of (4.1.1) as we recall. Since $\bar{\rho}_{\Pi, \lambda}$ is absolutely irreducible by Remark 4.2(1), the $k_{\lambda}[\mathbf{G}_F]$ -module $\mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}(1))_{\mathfrak{m}}$ is isomorphic to r copies of $\bar{\rho}_{\Pi, \lambda}^{\vee}(1) \cong \bar{\rho}_{\Pi, \lambda}$ with $r \geq \dim(\Pi_B^{\infty})^K$ by [BLR91] and the theory of old forms. By Remark 4.6(2), one has an isomorphism of $k_{\lambda}[\mathbf{G}']$ -modules

$$\bar{\rho}_{\Pi, \lambda} \cong k_{\lambda} \oplus k_{\lambda}(1).$$

In particular, $\mathbb{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}(1))_{\mathfrak{m}}$ is the direct sum of the eigenspaces of $\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2$ with eigenvalues 1 and p^{2g} both with multiplicity r .

By [BL84], Assumption 4.2(4), Remark 4.6(3) and the similar argument as above, the (generalized) eigenvalues of $\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2$ on $\mathbb{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, \mathbf{Q}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}}$ are $p^{g(g+1)} \alpha_{\Pi}^{-2i} \beta_{\Pi}^{-2(g-i)}$ with multiplicity $\binom{g}{i} \dim(\Pi_B^{\infty})^K$. Note that $p^{g(g+1)} \alpha_{\Pi}^{-2i} \beta_{\Pi}^{-2(g-i)}$ has image $p^{g(1+2i-g)}$ in $\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}$, which are distinct for different i under Definition 4.5(L2). For every $\mu \in k_{\lambda}$, let

$$(\mathbb{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}})_{\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2 \approx \mu} \subseteq \mathbb{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}}$$

denote the generalized eigenspace of $\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2$ with eigenvalue μ , that is, the maximal subspace annihilated by $(\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2 - \mu)^{\ell^N}$ for $N = 1, 2, \dots$. Then by the base change property (4.2.5), one has a canonical decomposition

$$\mathbb{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}} = \bigoplus_{i=0}^g (\mathbb{H}^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_{\lambda}((g+1)/2))_{\mathfrak{m}})_{\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2 \approx p^{g(1+2i-g)}},$$

where the i -th direct summand has dimension $\binom{g}{i} \dim(\Pi_B^{\infty})^K$ over k_{λ} . The direct summand with $\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2 \approx 1$ corresponds to the term with $i = (g-1)/2$, and it has dimension $\binom{g}{(g-1)/2} \dim(\Pi_B^{\infty})^K$. Note

that

$$H^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, (H^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda((g+1)/2))/\mathfrak{m})^{\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2 \approx p^{g(1+2i-g)}} = 0$$

for $i \neq (g-1)/2$. It follows that the natural map

(4.2.6)

$$(H^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda((g+1)/2))/\mathfrak{m})^{\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2 \approx 1} \rightarrow H^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, H^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda((g+1)/2))/\mathfrak{m})$$

is surjective. One gets a commutative diagram:

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} (H^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda(1))/\mathfrak{m})^{\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2 = 1} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}} H^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, H^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\emptyset_{\mathfrak{a}}}, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda(1))/\mathfrak{m}) \\ \cong \downarrow (\text{Gys}(k_\lambda)/\mathfrak{m})(1) & & \downarrow \text{Gys} \\ (H^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda((g+1)/2))/\mathfrak{m})^{\sigma_{\mathfrak{p}}^2 \approx 1} & \xrightarrow{(4.2.6)} & H^1(\mathbf{F}_{p^{2g}}, H^g(\mathbf{Sh}(G, K^p)_{\mathbf{F}_p^{\text{ac}}}, k_\lambda((g+1)/2))/\mathfrak{m}). \end{array}$$

Here, $(\text{Gys}(k_\lambda)/\mathfrak{m})(1)$ is injective by Proposition 4.10(2), and we deduce that it is an isomorphism for dimension reasons. It follows immediately that Gys is surjective. This finishes the proof of Theorem 4.7.

5. SELMER GROUPS OF TRIPLE PRODUCT MOTIVES

In this chapter, we study Selmer groups of certain triple product motives of elliptic curves in the context of the Bloch–Kato conjecture, which can be viewed as an application of the level raising result established in the previous chapter.

From now on, we fix a cubic totally real number field F . Let \tilde{F} be the normal closure of F in \mathbf{C} , and $F_0 \subseteq \mathbf{C}$ the unique subfield contained in \tilde{F} of degree $[\tilde{F} : F]$.

5.1. Main theorem. Let E be an elliptic curve over F . We have the \mathbf{Q} -motive $\otimes \text{Ind}_{\mathbf{Q}}^F h^1(E)$ (with coefficient \mathbf{Q}) of rank 8, which is the multiplicative induction of the F -motive $h^1(E)$ to \mathbf{Q} . The *cubic-triple product motive* of E is defined to be

$$M(E) := (\otimes \text{Ind}_{\mathbf{Q}}^F h^1(E))(2).$$

It is canonically polarized. For every prime p , the p -adic realization of $M(E)$, denoted by $M(E)_p$, is a Galois representation of \mathbf{Q} of dimension 8 with \mathbf{Q}_p -coefficients. In fact, up to a twist, it is the multiplicative induction from F to \mathbf{Q} of the rational p -adic Tate module of E .

Now we assume that E is modular. Then it gives rise to an irreducible cuspidal automorphic representation Π_E of $(\text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} \text{GL}_{2,F})(\mathbf{A})$ with trivial central character. In particular, the set $\Sigma(\Pi_E, \tau)$ defined in §1.3 contains ∞ . We have $L(s, M(E)) = L(s + 1/2, \Pi_E, \tau)$ (again see §1.3).

Assumption 5.1. We propose the following assumptions.

- (E0): The cardinality of $\Sigma(\Pi_E, \tau)$ is odd and at least 3.
- (E1): For every finite place w of F over some prime in $\Sigma(\Pi_E, \tau)$, the elliptic curve E has either good or multiplicative reduction at w .
- (E2): For distinct embeddings $\tau_1, \tau_2: F \hookrightarrow \tilde{F}$, the \tilde{F} -elliptic curve $E \otimes_{F, \tau_1} \tilde{F}$ is not isogenous to any (possibly trivial) quadratic twist of $E \otimes_{F, \tau_2} \tilde{F}$.
- (E3): The geometric fiber $E \otimes_F F^{\text{ac}}$ does not admit complex multiplication.

We now assume that E is modular and satisfies Assumption 5.1.

Put $\Delta^b = \Sigma(\Pi_E, \tau) - \{\infty\}$. Let Δ (resp. Δ' , Δ'') be the set of primes of F above Δ^b that is of degree either 1 or 3 (resp. unramified of degree 2, ramified of degree 2). We write the conductor of E as $\mathfrak{c}\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}''\mathfrak{c}^+$ such that \mathfrak{c} (resp. \mathfrak{c}' , \mathfrak{c}'' , \mathfrak{c}^+) has factors in Δ (resp. Δ' , Δ'' , elsewhere). Then Assumption 5.1(E1) implies that $\mathfrak{c}\mathfrak{c}'$ is square-free, and $\mathfrak{c}'' = \mathcal{O}_F$ by [Liu, Lemma 4.8]. We take an ideal \mathfrak{r} of \mathcal{O}_F contained in $N\mathfrak{c}^+$ for some integer $N \geq 4$ and coprime to Δ^b .

Assumption 5.1(E0) implies that Δ is a non-empty finite of even cardinality. Let B be a quaternion algebra over F , unique up to isomorphism, with ramification set Δ , and $\mathcal{O} \subseteq B$ be an \mathcal{O}_F -maximal order. Let \mathfrak{r}_0 and \mathfrak{r}_1 be two ideals of \mathcal{O}_F such that $\mathfrak{r}_0, \mathfrak{r}_1$ and Δ are mutually coprime. We recall the definition of the Hilbert modular stack $\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{r}_0, \mathfrak{r}_1}$ over $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbf{Z}[N_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathfrak{r}_0\mathfrak{r}_1)^{-1} \mathrm{disc}(F)^{-1}])$ defined in [Liu, Definition B.3]. For every $\mathbf{Z}[N_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathfrak{r}_0\mathfrak{r}_1)^{-1}(\mathrm{disc} F)^{-1}]$ -scheme T , $\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{r}_0, \mathfrak{r}_1}(T)$ is the groupoid of quadruples $(A, \iota_A, C_A, \alpha_A)$ where

- A is a projective abelian scheme over T ;
- $\iota_A : \mathcal{O} \rightarrow \mathrm{End}(A)$ is an injective homomorphism satisfying

$$\mathrm{Tr}(\iota_A(b) | \mathrm{Lie}(A)) = \mathrm{Tr}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} \mathrm{Tr}_{B/F}^\circ(b)$$

for all $b \in \mathcal{O}$;

- C_A is an \mathcal{O} -stable finite flat subgroup of $A[\mathfrak{r}_0]$ which is étale locally isomorphic to $(\mathcal{O}_F/\mathfrak{r}_0)^2$ as $\mathcal{O}/\mathfrak{r}_0\mathcal{O} \cong \mathrm{M}_2(\mathcal{O}_F/\mathfrak{r}_0)$ -modules,
- $\alpha_A : (\mathcal{O}_F/\mathfrak{r}_1)_{\mathcal{O}_T}^2 \rightarrow A$ is an \mathcal{O} -equivariant injective homomorphism of group schemes over T .

If $\mathfrak{r}_1 = \mathcal{O}_F$, α_A is trivial and we usually omit it from the notation. If \mathfrak{r}_1 is contained in $N\mathcal{O}_F$ for some integer $N \geq 4$, then $\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{r}_0, \mathfrak{r}_1}$ is a scheme.

We put $\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} := \mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r}}$. Let $\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)$ be the set of all ideals of \mathcal{O}_F containing $\mathfrak{r}(\mathfrak{c}^+)^{-1}$ as in [Liu, Notation A.5]. For every $\mathfrak{d} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)$, we have the following composite map

$$(5.1.1) \quad \tilde{\delta}^{\mathfrak{d}} : \mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} = \mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r}} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r}, \mathcal{O}_F} \xrightarrow{\delta^{\mathfrak{d}}} \mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathcal{O}_F}$$

which is a finite étale morphism of Deligne–Mumford stacks, where $\delta^{\mathfrak{d}}$ is the degeneracy map defined as follows. If (A, ι_A, C_A) is an object of $\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r}, \mathcal{O}_F}(T)$ for some $\mathrm{Spec}(\mathbf{Z}[N_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r})^{-1} \mathrm{disc}(F)^{-1}])$ -scheme T , then its image by $\delta^{\mathfrak{d}}$ is given by the object $(A', \iota_{A'}, C_{A'})$, where

- A' is the quotient A by the finite flat subgroup $C_A[\mathfrak{d}]$,
- $\iota_{A'}$ is the induced \mathcal{O} -action on A' from A ,
- $C_{A'}$ is the unique subgroup scheme of $C_A/C_A[\mathfrak{d}]$ étale locally isomorphic to $(\mathcal{O}_F/\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+)^2$,

See [Liu, §B.1] for more details.

Remark 5.2. The requirement that $|\Sigma(\Pi_E, \tau)| \geq 3$, that is, $\Delta \neq \emptyset$ is not essential. The reason we require this is *not* to make the relevant Shimura variety $\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}}$ proper. In fact, it is used to obtain a refinement (Proposition 5.9) of Theorem 4.7 so that the map (4.1.5) is also *injective* in order to deduce Lemma 5.14 which is needed for the *first explicit reciprocity law* back in [Liu], through a trick using Jacquet–Langlands correspondence. However, it is not clear to us what are optimal conditions for the map (4.1.5) to be injective.

From now on, we fix an element $\mathfrak{w} \in \Delta$. Let \mathcal{B} be the totally definite quaternion algebra over F , ramified exactly at $\Delta \setminus \{\mathfrak{w}\}$. Put

$$(5.1.2) \quad \mathcal{Y}_{\mathfrak{r}} := \mathcal{B}^\times \backslash \widehat{\mathcal{B}}^\times / K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{w}\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r})$$

where $K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{w}\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r}) \subseteq \widehat{\mathcal{B}}^\times$ is an open compact subgroup defined similarly as in Example 2.12.

For every ideal \mathfrak{s} contained in \mathfrak{c}^+ , we let $\mathbf{R}(\mathfrak{s})$ be the union of primes dividing \mathfrak{s} and primes above Δ^{\flat} . In particular, we have the homomorphism

$$\phi^{\mathfrak{s}} := \phi_{\Pi_E}^{\mathbf{R}(\mathfrak{s})} : \mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R}(\mathfrak{s})}] \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}$$

such that $\phi^{\mathfrak{s}}(\mathbb{T}_{\mathfrak{q}}) = a_{\mathfrak{q}}(E)$ and $\phi^{\mathfrak{s}}(\mathbb{S}_{\mathfrak{q}}) = 1$ for every prime $\mathfrak{q} \notin \mathbf{R}(\mathfrak{s})$. Here we recall that $\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R}}$ is the Hecke monoid away from \mathbf{R} [Liu, Notation 3.1].

Let p be a rational prime⁴. Let \mathfrak{m}_p^s be the kernel of the composite map $\mathbf{Z}[\mathbb{T}^{\mathbf{R}(s)}] \xrightarrow{\phi^s} \mathbf{Z} \rightarrow \mathbf{F}_p$. We also have an induced Galois representation

$$\rho_{\Pi_E, p}: G_F \rightarrow \mathrm{GL}(T_p(E)) \simeq \mathrm{GL}_2(\mathbf{Z}_p),$$

where $T_p(E)$ is the p -adic Tate module of E . Put $\bar{\rho}_{\Pi_E, p} := \rho_{\Pi_E, p} \pmod{p}$.

Definition 5.3 (Perfect pair). We say that

- (1) p is *generic* if $(\mathrm{Ind}_F^{\mathbf{Q}} \bar{\rho}_{\Pi_E, p})|_{G_{\tilde{F}}}$ has the largest possible image, which is isomorphic to $G(\mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{F}_p) \oplus \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{F}_p) \oplus \mathrm{SL}_2(\mathbf{F}_p))$;
- (2) the pair (p, \mathfrak{r}) is *\mathfrak{s} -clean*, for an ideal \mathfrak{s} of \mathcal{O}_F contained in \mathfrak{r} , if
 - (a) the canonical map $\Gamma(\mathcal{Y}_{\mathfrak{r}}, \mathbf{Z}_p)/\mathfrak{m}_p^s$ has dimension $|\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$ over \mathbf{F}_p ;
 - (b) $\mathrm{H}^3(\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p)/\mathfrak{m}_p^s$ has dimension 8 over \mathbf{F}_p , and the canonical map

$$\bigoplus_{\mathfrak{d} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)} \tilde{\delta}_*^{\mathfrak{d}}: \mathrm{H}^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p)/\mathfrak{m}_p^s \rightarrow \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{d} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)} \mathrm{H}^3(\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p)/\mathfrak{m}_p^s$$

is an isomorphism;

- (3) the pair (p, \mathfrak{r}) is *perfect* if
 - (a) $p \geq 11$ and $p \neq 13, 19$;
 - (b) p is coprime to Δ^{\flat} and $\mathfrak{r} \cdot |(\mathbf{Z}/\mathfrak{r} \cap \mathbf{Z})^{\times}| \cdot \mu(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+) \cdot |\mathrm{Cl}(F)_{\mathfrak{r}}| \cdot \mathrm{disc} F$, where $\mathrm{Cl}(F)_{\mathfrak{r}}$ is the ray class group of F with respect to \mathfrak{r} , and

$$\mu(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+) = N_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathfrak{r}(\mathfrak{c}^+)^{-1}) \prod_{\mathfrak{q}} \left(1 + \frac{1}{N_{F/\mathbf{Q}}(\mathfrak{q})} \right);$$

with \mathfrak{q} running through the prime ideals of \mathcal{O}_F dividing \mathfrak{r} but not \mathfrak{c}^+ ;

- (c) p is generic;
- (d) it is \mathfrak{r} -clean; and
- (e) $\bar{\rho}_{\Pi_E, p}$ is ramified at \mathfrak{w} .

On the other hand, let B^{\flat} be a quaternion algebra over \mathbf{Q} , unique up to isomorphisms, with ramification set Δ^{\flat} so that $B \cong B^{\flat} \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}} F$. We have similarly a moduli scheme $\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\flat} := \mathcal{X}(\Delta^{\flat})_{\mathbf{Z}, \mathfrak{r} \cap \mathbf{Z}}$ attached to B^{\flat} . Then we obtain a canonical morphism

$$\theta: \mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\flat} \rightarrow \mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}}$$

over $\mathbf{Z}[(\mathfrak{r} \mathrm{disc} F)^{-1}]$ similar to [Liu, (4.1.1)]. It is a finite morphism. Denote by $\Theta_{p, \mathfrak{r}}$ the image of $\theta_*[\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\flat} \otimes \mathbf{Q}] \in \mathrm{CH}^2(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Q})$ under the Abel–Jacobi map

$$\mathrm{AJ}_p: \mathrm{CH}^2(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}) \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}, \mathrm{H}^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\mathrm{ac}}, \mathbf{Q}_p(2))/\ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}}).$$

By [Liu, Lemma 4.6], we have $\mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}_v, \mathrm{M}(E)_p) = 0$ for all primes $v \nmid p$. Thus, we recall the following definition.

Definition 5.4 ([BK90] or [Liu, Definition 4.7]). The *Bloch–Kato Selmer group* for the representation $\mathrm{M}(E)_p$ is the subspace $\mathrm{H}_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, \mathrm{M}(E)_p)$ consisting of classes $s \in \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}, \mathrm{M}(E)_p)$ such that

$$\mathrm{loc}_p(s) \in \mathrm{H}_f^1(\mathbf{Q}_p, \mathrm{M}(E)_p) := \ker[\mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}_p, \mathrm{M}(E)_p) \rightarrow \mathrm{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}_p, \mathrm{M}(E)_p \otimes_{\mathbf{Q}_p} \mathrm{B}_{\mathrm{cris}})].$$

Theorem 5.5. *Let E be a modular elliptic curve over F satisfying Assumption 5.1. For a rational prime p , if there exists a perfect pair (p, \mathfrak{r}) (Definition 5.3) such that $\Theta_{p, \mathfrak{r}} \neq 0$, then*

$$\dim_{\mathbf{Q}_p} \mathrm{H}_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, \mathrm{M}(E)_p) = 1.$$

⁴The readers may notice that we switch the roles of p and ℓ (or λ) in §5 from §4. This is due to a different convention in the study of Selmer groups.

Remark 5.6. By a similar argument of [Liu, Lemma 4.10], given an ideal \mathfrak{r} of \mathcal{O}_F contained in $N\mathfrak{c}^+$ for some integer $N \geq 4$ and coprime to Δ^b , there exists a finite set $\mathcal{P}_{E,\mathfrak{r}}$ of rational primes such that (p, \mathfrak{r}) is a perfect pair for every $p \notin \mathcal{P}_{E,\mathfrak{r}}$. An upper bound for $\mathcal{P}_{E,\mathfrak{r}}$ can be computed effectively.

Remark 5.7. Assuming the (conjectural) triple product version of the Gross–Zagier formula and the Beilinson–Bloch conjecture on the injectivity of the Abel–Jacobi map, the following two statements should be equivalent:

- $L'(0, \mathbf{M}(E)) \neq 0$ (note that $L(0, \mathbf{M}(E)) = 0$ by Assumption 5.1(E0)); and
- there exists some \mathfrak{r}_0 such that for every other \mathfrak{r} contained in \mathfrak{r}_0 , we have $\Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r}} \neq 0$ as long as (p, \mathfrak{r}) is a perfect pair.

Here, we need to use (the proof of) [Liu, Proposition 4.9]. Then Theorem 5.5 implies that if $L'(0, \mathbf{M}(E)) \neq 0$, that is, $\text{ord}_{s=0} L(s, \mathbf{M}(E)) = 1$, then $\dim_{\mathbf{Q}_p} H_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, \mathbf{M}(E)_p) = 1$ for all but finitely many p .

5.2. A refinement of arithmetic level raising. For now on, we fix a perfect pair (p, \mathfrak{r}) (Definition 5.3), and put $\mathfrak{m}^s = \mathfrak{m}_p^s$ for short.

Definition 5.8. Let $\nu \geq 1$ be an integer. We say that a prime ℓ is (p^ν, \mathfrak{r}) -admissible if

- (A1): ℓ is inert in F (with $\mathfrak{l} = \ell\mathcal{O}_F$), unramified in \tilde{F} , and coprime $\mathbf{R}(\mathfrak{r}) \cup \{2, p\}$;
- (A2): (p, \mathfrak{r}) is $\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}$ -clean;
- (A3): $p \nmid (\ell^{18} - 1)(\ell^6 + 1)$;
- (A4): $\phi^{\mathfrak{r}}(\mathbf{T}_{\mathfrak{l}}) \equiv \ell^3 + 1 \pmod{p^\nu}$.

Let ℓ be a (p^ν, \mathfrak{r}) -admissible prime. Then $\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Z}_{(\ell)}$ is canonically isomorphic to $\mathbf{Sh}(G, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r})^\ell)$ with $G = \text{Res}_{F/\mathbf{Q}} B^\times$ considered in §2.5 (See Remark 2.5 on the issue of polarizations and Example 2.12 for the open compact subgroup $K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r})$), and $\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}}^b \otimes \mathbf{Z}_{(\ell)}$ is canonically isomorphic to $\mathbf{Sh}(G^b, K_{0,1}(\mathbf{Z}, \mathfrak{r} \cap \mathbf{Z})^\ell)$ with $G^b = (B^b)^\times$.

Put $X_{\mathfrak{r}} := \mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_\ell$. As before, we denote by $X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}}$ the superspecial locus of $X_{\mathfrak{r}}$. By Theorem 3.15, we may identify $X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}}(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}})$ with $\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}, K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r})^\ell)(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}})$. The following proposition is a refinement of Theorem 4.7.

Proposition 5.9. *Let ℓ be a (p^ν, \mathfrak{r}) -admissible prime. Then the map*

$$\Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}}(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}), \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}} \rightarrow H^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, H^3(X_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}})$$

as in (4.1.5) is an isomorphism.

Proof. By the proof of Proposition 5.12(1), we know that $H^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, H^3(X_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}})$ is a free \mathbf{Z}/p^ν -module of rank $3|\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$. Thus it suffices to show that $\Gamma(X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}}(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}), \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}}$ is a free \mathbf{Z}/p^ν -module of rank $|\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$ by Theorem 4.7. By the Nakayama lemma, it suffices to show that $\Gamma(X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}}(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}), \mathbf{F}_p) / \mathfrak{m}^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}}$ has dimension $|\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$ over \mathbf{F}_p .

Recall that so far, we have three quaternion algebras over F in the story: \mathfrak{B} ramified at $\Sigma_\infty \cup \Delta \setminus \{\mathfrak{w}\}$, B ramified at Δ , and $B_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}}$ ramified at $\Sigma_\infty \cup \{\mathfrak{l}\} \cup \Delta$. Now we let B' be the fourth quaternion algebra over F ramified at $\Sigma \cup \{\mathfrak{l}\} \cup \Delta \setminus \{\mathfrak{w}\}$ where Σ is a fixed subset of Σ_∞ of cardinality 2. Let C be the corresponding proper Shimura curve over F (with the embedding into \mathbf{Q}^{ac} given by the unique element in $\Sigma_\infty \setminus \Sigma$) of the similarly defined level $K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{w}\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r})$. As in Step 4 of the proof of [Liu, Proposition 3.32], C has a natural strictly semistable model at \mathfrak{l} . The corresponding weight spectral sequence provides us with a canonical isomorphism

$$\Gamma(\mathcal{Y}_{\mathfrak{r}}, \mathbf{Z}_p) / \mathfrak{m}^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}} \simeq H_{\text{sing}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_{\ell^6}, H^1(C \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p) / \mathfrak{m}^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}})$$

as in the proof of [Liu, Proposition 3.32]. By Definition 5.8(A2), $H_{\text{sing}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_{\ell^6}, H^1(C \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p) / \mathfrak{m}^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}})$ has dimension $|\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$. By [BLR91], we conclude that $H^1(C \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p) / \mathfrak{m}^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}}$ is isomorphic to $\rho_{\Pi_{E,p}}^{\oplus |\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|}$ as an $\mathbf{F}_p[G_F]$ -module. In particular, $H^1(C \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p) / \mathfrak{m}^{\mathfrak{r}\mathfrak{l}}$ has dimension $2|\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$.

Now consider the semistable reduction of C at \mathfrak{w} . Let C_0 be the proper Shimura curve over F associated to B' of the level $K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r})$. Then $H^1(C_0 \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p)/\mathfrak{m}^{\text{rf}} = 0$ by Definition 5.3(3e). Therefore, we have a canonical isomorphism

$$H^1(\mathbf{I}_{\mathfrak{w}}, H^1(C \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p)/\mathfrak{m}^{\text{rf}}) \simeq \Gamma(X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}), \mathbf{F}_p)/\mathfrak{m}^{\text{rf}}$$

from the weight spectral sequence, as the supersingular set of C at \mathfrak{w} is also $X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}})$. Therefore, $\Gamma(X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}), \mathbf{F}_p)/\mathfrak{m}^{\text{rf}}$ has dimension $|\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$. The proposition follows. \square

5.3. Second explicit reciprocity law. For now on, we fix an integer $\nu \geq 1$ and put $\Lambda = \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu$. Let $\rho: \mathbf{G}_F \rightarrow \text{GL}(\mathbf{N}_\rho)$ be the reduction of $\rho_{\Pi_{E,p}}$ modulo p^ν , where $\mathbf{N}_\rho = T_p(E) \otimes \Lambda$. We have the multiplicatively induced representation $\rho^\sharp: \mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{Q}} \rightarrow \text{GL}(\mathbf{N}_\rho^\sharp)$ with $\mathbf{N}_\rho^\sharp = \mathbf{N}_\rho^{\otimes 3}$.

Let ℓ be a (p^ν, \mathfrak{r}) -admissible prime. Recall that Σ_∞ denotes the set of archimedean places of F . For every ideal \mathfrak{s} of \mathcal{O}_F coprime to $\Delta \cup \{\mathfrak{l}\}$, let $\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{s}} := \mathcal{S}(\Sigma_\infty \cup \Delta \cup \{\mathfrak{l}\})_{\mathfrak{s}}$ denote the set of isomorphism classes of oriented \mathcal{O}_F -Eichler order of discriminant $\Sigma_\infty \cup \Delta \cup \{\mathfrak{l}\}$ and level \mathfrak{s} (see [Liu, Definition A.1]). It has an action by $\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{F}_\ell}$ such that the arithmetic Frobenius σ_ℓ acts by switching the orientation at \mathfrak{l} .

Lemma 5.10. *There is a canonical isomorphism $X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}})/\text{Cl}(F)_{\mathfrak{r}} \cong \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}$. Moreover, the induced action of $\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{F}_\ell}$ on $\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}$ factors through $\text{Gal}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^2}/\mathbf{F}_\ell)$ and is given by the map op_ℓ switching the orientation at \mathfrak{l} .*

Proof. It is a special case of [Liu, Proposition A.13(1)]. \square

Denote by $\psi: X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}) \rightarrow \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}$ the canonical projection from the above lemma.

Lemma 5.11. *The canonical map*

$$\psi^*: \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}} \rightarrow \Gamma(X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}), \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}}$$

is an isomorphism.

Proof. It follows similarly as [Liu, Lemma 3.24]. \square

Proposition 5.12. *Let ℓ be a (p^ν, \mathfrak{r}) -admissible prime. Then*

- (1) $H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)))/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}}$ (resp. $H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)))/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}}$) is a free Λ -module of rank 1 (resp. $\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)$);
- (2) op_ℓ acts trivially on $\Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}}$; and
- (3) we have a canonical isomorphism

$$\Phi: \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}} \rightarrow H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}})$$

induced by ψ^ and the isomorphism in Proposition 5.9.*

Proof. For (1), by Definition 5.8(A2), the Nakayama lemma and [BL84], we have isomorphisms

$$\begin{aligned} H^3(\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathbf{Q}_\ell^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}} &\cong \mathbf{N}_\rho^\sharp(-1), \\ H^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}_\ell^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}} &\cong (\mathbf{N}_\rho^\sharp(-1))^{\oplus |\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|} \end{aligned}$$

of $\Lambda[\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{Q}_\ell}]$ -modules. By Definition 5.8(A3, A4), the $\Lambda[\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{Q}_\ell}]$ -module $\mathbf{N}_\rho^\sharp(2)$ is unramified and isomorphic to $\Lambda(-1) \oplus \Lambda^{\oplus 3} \oplus \Lambda(1)^{\oplus 3} \oplus \Lambda(2)$. Thus (1) follows.

For (2) and (3), consider the action of $\text{Gal}(\mathbf{Q}_{\ell^6}/\mathbf{Q}_\ell)$ on both sides of the isomorphism

$$\Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}} \xrightarrow{\psi^*} \Gamma(\mathfrak{B} \times X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}), \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}} \rightarrow H^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, H^3(X_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu(2)))/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}}.$$

We obtain an isomorphism

$$(\Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}})^{\text{op}_{\ell}=1} \cong H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rf}}).$$

By (1), $H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}})$ is a free Λ -module of rank $|\mathfrak{D}(\tau, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$. Therefore, the inclusion

$$(\Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}})^{\text{op}\ell=1} \subseteq \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}$$

is an isomorphism as both sides are free Λ -module of rank $|\mathfrak{D}(\tau, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$. Thus both (2) and (3) follow. \square

Denote by $\Theta_{p, \tau}^\nu$ the image of $\theta_*[\mathcal{X}_\tau^b \otimes \mathbf{Q}] \in \text{CH}^2(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q})$ under the Abel–Jacobi map

$$\text{AJ}_p: \text{CH}^2(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}) \rightarrow H^1(\mathbf{Q}, H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}).$$

Note that the Bloch–Kato Selmer group $H_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}})$ can be defined similarly for the torsion Galois representation $H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}$ ([Liu16, Definition 3.1]), and the image of AJ_p lies in the subgroup $H_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}})$. For any ideal $\mathfrak{s} \subseteq \mathcal{O}_F$, let $\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{s}}^b = \mathcal{S}(\{\infty\} \cup \Delta^b \cup \{\ell\})_{\mathfrak{s} \cap \mathbf{Z}}$ denote the set of isomorphism classes of oriented \mathbf{Z} -Eichler order of discriminant $\{\infty\} \cup \Delta^b \cup \{\ell\}$ and level $\mathfrak{s} \cap \mathbf{Z}$ ([Liu, Definition A.1]). We have a natural map given by extension of scalars

$$(5.3.1) \quad \vartheta: \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \tau}^b \rightarrow \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}.$$

We have a bilinear pairing $(,) : \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \mathbf{Z}) \times \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \mathbf{Z})$ such that $(f_1, f_2) = \sum_{h \in \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}} f_1(h) f_2(h)$. It induces a perfect pairing $(,) : \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}} \times \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}} \rightarrow \Lambda$.

Theorem 5.13 (Second explicit reciprocity law). *Let ℓ be an (p^ν, τ) -admissible prime. We have*

$$(\Phi^{-1} \text{loc}_\ell \Theta_{p, \tau}^\nu, f) = \frac{|(\mathbf{Z}/\tau \cap \mathbf{Z})^\times|}{2(1-\ell)|\text{Cl}(F)_\tau|} \cdot \sum_{x \in \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \tau}^b} f(\vartheta(x))$$

for every $f \in \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}$. Here, Φ is the isomorphism in Proposition 5.12.

We note that $2(1-\ell)|\text{Cl}(F)_\tau|$ is invertible in Λ .

Proof. Recall that $X_\tau = \mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{F}_\ell$. Similarly, we put $X_\tau^b = \mathcal{X}_\tau^b \otimes \mathbf{F}_\ell$. Then we have the morphism $\theta: X_\tau^b \rightarrow X_\tau$ over \mathbf{F}_ℓ . Let $\bar{\Theta}$ be the image of $\theta_*[X_\tau^b] \in \text{CH}^2(X_\tau)$ in $H^1(\mathbf{F}_\ell, H^3(X_\tau \otimes \mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}})$ defined similarly as for $\Theta_{p, \tau}^\nu$. Then under the canonical identification

$$H^1(\mathbf{F}_\ell, H^3(X_\tau \otimes \mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}) \cong H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}),$$

$\bar{\Theta}$ coincides with $\text{loc}_\ell \Theta_{p, \tau}^\nu$.

From Proposition 5.9, we have an isomorphism

$$\bigoplus_{\mathfrak{B}} \Gamma(X_\tau^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}), \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}} \xrightarrow{\cong} H^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, H^3(X_\tau \otimes \mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}).$$

For each $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}$, we denote by

$$\Psi_{\mathfrak{a}}: H^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, H^3(X_\tau \otimes \mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}) \rightarrow \Gamma(X_\tau^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}), \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}$$

the map obtained by taking the inverse of the previous isomorphism followed by the canonical projection to the direct summand indexed by \mathfrak{a} . By a similar proof of [Liu, Proposition 4.3], we have the following commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} X_\tau^{b, \text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}) & \xrightarrow{\theta} & X_\tau^{\text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}}) \\ \psi^b \downarrow & & \downarrow \psi \\ \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \tau}^b & \xrightarrow{\vartheta} & \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau} \end{array}$$

where ψ^b is obtained similarly as ψ , but for $X_{\mathfrak{r}}^b$. Therefore, the theorem will follow if we can show that for every $f \in \Gamma(X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}), \Lambda)[\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}]$, we have

$$(5.3.2) \quad (\Psi_{\mathfrak{a}} \bar{\Theta}, f) = \frac{1}{2(1-\ell)} \sum_{X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{b, \text{SP}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}})} f(\theta(x)).$$

For every $\mathfrak{a} \in \mathfrak{B}$, we have the following commutative diagram as (4.2.1)

$$\begin{array}{ccccc} W(\mathfrak{a}) & \hookrightarrow & Z_{\theta}(\mathfrak{a}) & \xrightarrow{i_{\mathfrak{a}}} & \mathbf{Sh}(G)_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}} \cong X_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{\ell^6} \\ \downarrow & & \downarrow \pi_{\mathfrak{a}} & & \\ X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{\ell^6} & \xrightarrow{\cong} & \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}})_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}} & \xrightarrow{j_{\mathfrak{a}}} & \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}})_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}}, \end{array}$$

where the square is Cartesian. Here, we omit the away-from- ℓ level structure $K_{0,1}(\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r})^{\ell}$ in the notation. However, in this case, $Z_{\theta}(\mathfrak{a})$ coincides with the Goren–Oort divisor $\mathbf{Sh}(G)_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, \tau(\mathfrak{a})}$ for some $\tau(\mathfrak{a}) \in \Sigma_{\infty}$ determined by \mathfrak{a} . Thus it is easy to see that the (scheme-theoretical) intersection $\Gamma_{\theta} \cap \text{pr}_2^* Z_{\theta}(\mathfrak{a})$ is contained in $X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{b, \text{SP}} \times X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}}$, where $\Gamma_{\theta} \subseteq X_{\mathfrak{r}}^b \times X_{\mathfrak{r}}$ is the graph of θ and $\text{pr}_2: X_{\mathfrak{r}}^b \times X_{\mathfrak{r}} \rightarrow X_{\mathfrak{r}}$ is the canonical projection. More precisely, it is the graph of the restricted morphism $\theta: X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{b, \text{SP}} \rightarrow X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}}$. Therefore, we have

$$(5.3.3) \quad \pi_{\mathfrak{a}*} i_{\mathfrak{a}}^* \theta_* [X_{\mathfrak{r}}^b] = \theta_{\mathfrak{a}*} [X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{b, \text{SP}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}]$$

in $\text{CH}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}})_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}})$, where $\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}$ is the composite morphism

$$X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{b, \text{SP}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{\ell^6} \xrightarrow{\theta} X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{\ell^6} \cong \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}})_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}} \xrightarrow{j_{\mathfrak{a}}} \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}})_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}}.$$

By the proof of Theorem 4.7 in §4.2, we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \text{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, \text{H}^3(X_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}) & \xleftarrow{\text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{a}}} & \text{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, \text{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}})_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda(1))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}) \\ \Psi_{\mathfrak{a}} \downarrow & & \downarrow \Phi_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \\ \Gamma(X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}}(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}), \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}} & \xleftarrow{\cong} & \Gamma(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}})(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}), \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}} \end{array}$$

where

- $\Phi_{\mathfrak{a}}: \Gamma(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}})(\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}), \Lambda)/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}} \rightarrow \text{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, \text{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}})_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda(1))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}})$ is the map induced from (4.2.2), which is an isomorphism;
- $\text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{a}}$ is induced from $i_{\mathfrak{a}!} \circ \pi_{\mathfrak{a}}^*$; and
- the bottom isomorphism is the one induced by the identification $X_{\mathfrak{r}}^{\text{SP}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{\ell^6} \cong \mathbf{Sh}(G_{\mathbf{S}_{\max}})_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}}$.

Note that we have another map

$$\text{Res}_{\mathfrak{a}}: \text{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, \text{H}^3(X_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}}) \rightarrow \text{H}^1(\mathbf{F}_{\ell^6}, \text{H}^1(\mathbf{Sh}(G_{\theta_{\mathfrak{a}}})_{\mathbf{F}_{\ell}^{\text{ac}}}, \Lambda(1))/\ker \phi^{\text{rl}})$$

induced from $\pi_{\mathfrak{a}!} \circ i_{\mathfrak{a}}^*$. If we write $\mathfrak{B} = \{\mathfrak{a}, \mathfrak{b}, \mathfrak{c}\}$, then the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} \Phi_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \circ \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{a}} \circ \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{a}} \circ \Phi_{\mathfrak{a}} & \Phi_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \circ \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{a}} \circ \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{b}} \circ \Phi_{\mathfrak{b}} & \Phi_{\mathfrak{a}}^{-1} \circ \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{a}} \circ \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{c}} \circ \Phi_{\mathfrak{c}} \\ \Phi_{\mathfrak{b}}^{-1} \circ \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{b}} \circ \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{a}} \circ \Phi_{\mathfrak{a}} & \Phi_{\mathfrak{b}}^{-1} \circ \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{b}} \circ \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{b}} \circ \Phi_{\mathfrak{b}} & \Phi_{\mathfrak{b}}^{-1} \circ \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{b}} \circ \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{c}} \circ \Phi_{\mathfrak{c}} \\ \Phi_{\mathfrak{c}}^{-1} \circ \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{c}} \circ \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{a}} \circ \Phi_{\mathfrak{a}} & \Phi_{\mathfrak{c}}^{-1} \circ \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{c}} \circ \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{b}} \circ \Phi_{\mathfrak{b}} & \Phi_{\mathfrak{c}}^{-1} \circ \text{Res}_{\mathfrak{c}} \circ \text{Gys}_{\mathfrak{c}} \circ \Phi_{\mathfrak{c}} \end{pmatrix}$$

is equal to

$$\begin{pmatrix} -2\ell & 1 & 1 \\ 1 & -2\ell & 1 \\ 1 & 1 & -2\ell \end{pmatrix}.$$

In fact, the diagonal entries are determined by [TX14, Theorem 4.3(2)] and off-diagonal entries are obvious. Therefore, we have

$$\Phi_a^{-1} \text{Res}_a \bar{\Theta} = (-2\ell)\Psi_a \bar{\Theta} + \Psi_b \bar{\Theta} + \Psi_c \bar{\Theta}.$$

On the other hand, by (5.3.3), we have

$$\Phi_a^{-1} \text{Res}_a \bar{\Theta} = \theta_* \mathbf{1}^b$$

where $\mathbf{1}^b$ is the characteristic function on $X_\tau^{b, \text{sp}}(\mathbf{F}_\ell^{\text{ac}})$. Thus (5.3.2) follows as $\Psi_a \bar{\Theta} = \Psi_b \bar{\Theta} = \Psi_c \bar{\Theta}$. The theorem is proved. \square

The following lemma will be needed in the next section.

Lemma 5.14. *Let \mathfrak{s} be an ideal of \mathcal{O}_F contained in \mathfrak{rl} . The map*

$$\bigoplus_{\mathfrak{d} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)} \delta_*^\mathfrak{d} : \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{s}} \rightarrow \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{d} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)} \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{s}}$$

is an isomorphism of free Λ -modules of rank $|\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$, for $\mathfrak{s} = \mathfrak{rl}$.

Proof. The ideal of proof is similar to [Liu, Lemma 3.33]. Recall that we have morphisms $\tilde{\delta}^\mathfrak{d}$ in (5.1.1). As usual, we put $\tilde{\delta} = \tilde{\delta}^{\mathcal{O}_F}$. Form the following pullback square

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \mathcal{X}_\tau^\mathfrak{d} & \xrightarrow{\varepsilon} & \mathcal{X}_\tau \\ \varepsilon^\mathfrak{d} \downarrow & & \downarrow \tilde{\delta}^\mathfrak{d} \\ \mathcal{X}_\tau & \xrightarrow{\tilde{\delta}} & \mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathcal{O}_F} \end{array}$$

of schemes over $\mathbf{Z}(\ell)$, where all morphisms are finite étale. The scheme $\mathcal{X}_\tau^\mathfrak{d}$ has a natural action by $\mathbb{T}^{\mathfrak{R}(\mathfrak{rl})}$ under which the above diagram is equivariant. By an argument similar to [Liu, Lemma 3.33], we obtain a commutative diagram

$$(5.3.4) \quad \begin{array}{ccc} \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}} & \xrightarrow{\Phi} & H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}}) \\ |_{(\mathcal{O}_F/\mathfrak{r})^\times \cdot \delta_*^\mathfrak{d} \circ \delta_*^\mathfrak{d}} \downarrow & & \downarrow \varepsilon_*^\mathfrak{d} \circ \varepsilon^* \\ \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}} & \xrightarrow{\Phi} & H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}}) \end{array}$$

where Φ is the isomorphism in Proposition 5.12. By proper base change, the endomorphism $\varepsilon_*^\mathfrak{d} \circ \varepsilon^*$ of $H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))$ coincides with the composite map

$$H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)) \xrightarrow{\tilde{\delta}_*^\mathfrak{d}} H^3(\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)) \xrightarrow{\tilde{\delta}^*} H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)).$$

Definition 5.8(A2) and Proposition 5.12(1) imply that the image of

$$\varepsilon_*^\mathfrak{d} \circ \varepsilon^* : H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}}) \rightarrow H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_\ell, H^3(\mathcal{X}_\tau \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}})$$

is a free Λ -module of rank 1. Here, we use the fact that $\tilde{\delta}^*$ is injective, as $p \nmid \mu(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)$ in Definition 5.3(3b).

By the commutative diagram (5.3.4), we know that the image of

$$\delta^* \circ \delta_*^\mathfrak{d} : \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}} \rightarrow \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}}$$

is a free Λ -module of rank 1. Since $\tilde{\delta}_*^\mathfrak{d}$ is surjective and δ^* is injective, $\Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}}$ is a free Λ -module of rank 1. Similarly, we may deduce that the map

$$(5.3.5) \quad \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{d} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)} \delta_*^\mathfrak{d} : \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\tau}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}} \rightarrow \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{d} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)} \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{rl}}$$

is injective. However, since the source of (5.3.5) a free Λ -module of rank $|\mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)|$ by Proposition 5.12, the map (5.3.5) has to be an isomorphism. The lemma follows. \square

5.4. First explicit reciprocity law. We keep the notation in §5.3. Let $\underline{\ell} = (\ell, \ell')$ be a pair of distinct (p^ν, \mathfrak{r}) -admissible primes (Definition 5.8) such that Lemma 5.14 holds for $\mathfrak{s} = \mathfrak{r}\ell'$, where $\ell' := \ell' \mathcal{O}_F$.

Put $\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}} := \mathcal{X}(\Delta \cup \{\ell, \ell'\})_{\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r}}$ and $\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}}^\flat := \mathcal{X}(\Delta^\flat \cup \{\ell, \ell'\})_{\mathbf{Z}, \mathfrak{r} \cap \mathbf{Z}}$ ([Liu, Definition B.1]), as schemes over $\mathbf{Z}(\ell')$. Then we obtain a canonical morphism

$$(5.4.1) \quad \theta_{\underline{\ell}}: \mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}}^\flat \rightarrow \mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}}.$$

Denote by $\Theta_{p, \mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}}^\nu$ the image of $\theta_{\underline{\ell}*}[\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}}^\flat \otimes \mathbf{Q}] \in \text{CH}^2(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}} \otimes \mathbf{Q})$ under the Abel–Jacobi map

$$\text{AJ}_p: \text{CH}^2(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}) \rightarrow \text{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}, \text{H}^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}\ell'}).$$

Theorem 5.15 (First explicit reciprocity law). *Let $\underline{\ell} = (\ell, \ell')$ be as above.*

- (1) *There is a canonical decomposition of the $\Lambda[\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{Q}}]$ -module*

$$\text{H}^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}\ell'} = \bigoplus_{\mathfrak{d} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)} M_0$$

where M_0 is isomorphic to $N_\rho^\sharp(2)$ as a $\Lambda[\mathbf{G}_{F_0}]$ -module.

- (2) *There is a canonical isomorphism*

$$\text{H}_{\text{sing}}^1(\mathbf{Q}^{\ell'}, \text{H}^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}\ell'}) \cong \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}, \Lambda) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}\ell'},$$

under which we have

$$(\partial \text{loc}_{\ell'} \Theta_{p, \mathfrak{r}, \underline{\ell}}^\nu, f) = (\ell' + 1) \cdot \frac{|(\mathbf{Z}/\mathfrak{r} \cap \mathbf{Z})^\times|}{|\text{Cl}(F)_\mathfrak{r}|} \cdot \sum_{x \in \mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{r}}^\flat} f(\vartheta(x))$$

for every $f \in \Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}, \Lambda)[\ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}\ell'}]$.

Proof. We will use results from [Liu, §3 & §4]. Put $\nabla^\flat = \Delta^\flat \cup \{\infty, \ell\}$ as in the setup of [Liu, §4.1]. By Lemma 5.14, $(\rho, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r})$ is a perfect quadruple in the sense of [Liu, Definition 3.2], satisfying [Liu, Assumption 4.1]. Moreover, ℓ' is a cubic-level raising prime for $(\rho, \mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r})$ in the sense of [Liu, Definition 3.3].

Note that the morphism (5.4.1) is nothing but $\theta: \mathcal{X}(\ell')_{\mathfrak{r}}^\flat \rightarrow \mathcal{X}(\ell')_{\mathfrak{c}', \mathfrak{r}}$ in [Liu, (4.1.1)]; and the map (5.3.1) is nothing but $\vartheta: \mathcal{S}_{\mathfrak{r}}^\flat \rightarrow \mathcal{S}_{\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{r}}$ in [Liu, (4.1.2)]. Therefore, (1) follows from [Liu, Theorem 3.5(2)]; and (2) follows from [Liu, Theorem 3.5(3) & Theorem 4.5]. \square

5.5. Proof of main theorem. Recall that we have the multiplicatively induced representation N_ρ^\sharp and the $\mathbf{Z}/p^\nu[\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{Q}}]$ -module M_0 as in Theorem 5.15. We have a $\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{Q}}$ -equivariant pairing

$$N_\rho^\sharp(-1) \times M_0 \rightarrow \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu(\chi)(1)$$

for some character $\chi: \mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{Q}} \rightarrow \text{Gal}(F_0/\mathbf{Q}) \rightarrow \{\pm 1\}$. It induces, for every prime power v , a local Tate pairing

$$\langle \cdot, \cdot \rangle_v: \text{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}_v, N_\rho^\sharp(-1)) \times \text{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}_v, M_0) \rightarrow \text{H}^2(\mathbf{Q}_v, \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu(\chi)(1)) \subseteq \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu.$$

For $s \in \text{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}, N_\rho^\sharp(-1))$ and $r \in \text{H}^1(\mathbf{Q}, M_0)$, we will write $\langle s, r \rangle_v$ rather than $\langle \text{loc}_v(s), \text{loc}_v(r) \rangle_v$.

Proof of Theorem 5.5. We assume that $\Theta_{p, \mathfrak{r}}$ is nonzero. Regard $\Theta_{p, \mathfrak{r}}$ as an element in $\text{H}_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, \text{H}^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}})$, which is not torsion. By [BL84] and the assumption that (p, \mathfrak{r}) is \mathfrak{r} -clean (Definition 5.3), we know that $N_p := \text{H}^3(\mathcal{X}(\Delta)_{\mathfrak{c}'\mathfrak{c}^+, \mathcal{O}_F} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \mathbf{Z}_p(2)) / \ker \phi^{\mathfrak{r}}$ is a $\mathbf{G}_{\mathbf{Q}}$ -stable lattice in $M(E)_p$; and there exists some $\mathfrak{d} \in \mathfrak{D}(\mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{c}^+)$ such that $\delta_*^\mathfrak{d} \Theta_{p, \mathfrak{r}} \in \text{H}_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, N_p)$ is not torsion. We fix such an element \mathfrak{d} . Let $\nu_0 \geq 0$ be the largest integer such that $\delta_*^\mathfrak{d} \Theta_{p, \mathfrak{r}} \in p^{\nu_0} \text{H}_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, N_p)$.

We prove by contradiction, hence assume $\dim_{\mathbf{Q}_p} H_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, M(E)_p) \geq 2$. In what follows, we fix a sufficiently large integer ν as before, and will give a lower bound on ν for which a contradiction emerges at the end of proof.

By [Liu16, Lemma 5.9], we may find a free \mathbf{Z}/p^ν -submodule S of $H_f^1(\mathbf{Q}, N_\rho^\sharp(-1))$ of rank 2 with a basis $\{s, s'\}$ such that $p^{\nu_0}s = \delta_*^\circ \Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r}}^\nu$. By the same discussion in [Liu, §4.3 (after Lemma 4.12)], we have tower of fields $\mathbf{L}_S/\mathbf{L}/\mathbf{Q}$ contained in \mathbf{Q}^{ac} . Let \square be the (finite) set of rational primes that are either ramified in \mathbf{L}_S or not coprime to Δ or $\mathfrak{r} \text{ disc } F$. Put $\nu_\square = \max\{\nu_v \mid v \in \square\}$ where ν_v is in [Liu, Lemma 4.12(2)]. We choose a prime $\ell_0 \notin \square$ such that ℓ_0 is (p^ν, \mathfrak{r}) -admissible (Definition 5.8) – this is possible by [Liu, Lemma 4.11]. Let $\gamma \in \text{Gal}(\mathbf{L}/\mathbf{Q})$ be the image of Frob_{w_0} under $\rho^\sharp(-1)$ (the image of $\rho^\sharp(-1)$ has been identified with $\text{Gal}(\mathbf{L}/\mathbf{Q})$), where w_0 is some prime of \mathbf{L} above ℓ_0 . Then γ has order coprime to p ; and $(N_\rho^\sharp(2))^{(\gamma)}$ is a free \mathbf{Z}/p^ν -module of rank 1.

By [Liu, Lemma 4.16] and (the argument for) [Liu, Lemma 4.11], we may choose two (\square, γ) -admissible places (in the sense of [Liu, Definition 4.15]) w, w' of \mathbf{L} such that

- (1) $\Psi_w(s') = 0$, $\Psi_w(s) = t$, $\Psi_{w'}(s') = t'$ with $t, t' \in (N_\rho^\sharp(2))^{(\gamma)}$ that are not divisible by p ;
- (2) the underlying prime ℓ of w and the underlying prime ℓ' of w' are distinct (p^ν, \mathfrak{r}) -admissible primes, such that Lemma 5.14 holds for $\mathfrak{s} = \mathfrak{r}\ell'$.

Put $\underline{\ell} = (\ell, \ell')$. Then there are elements $\Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r},\underline{\ell}}^\nu \in H^1(\mathbf{Q}, H^3(\mathcal{X}_{\mathfrak{r},\underline{\ell}} \otimes \mathbf{Q}^{\text{ac}}, \Lambda(2))/\ker \phi^{\text{rlf}})$ from §5.4, and $\delta_*^\circ \Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r},\underline{\ell}}^\nu \in H^1(\mathbf{Q}, M_0)$. We have

- (3) $\text{loc}_v \Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r},\underline{\ell}}^\nu \in H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_v, M_0)$ for a prime $v \notin \square \cup \{p, \ell, \ell'\}$, by [Liu16, Lemma 3.4];
- (4) $\text{loc}_p \Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r},\underline{\ell}}^\nu \in H_f^1(\mathbf{Q}_p, M_0)$, by [Nek00, Theorem 3.1(ii)].

By [Liu, Lemma 4.6] and [Liu16, Lemma 3.4], we have $\text{loc}_v(s') \in H_{\text{unr}}^1(\mathbf{Q}_v, N_\rho^\sharp(2))$ for every prime $v \notin \square \cup \{p, \ell, \ell'\}$. By [Liu16, Definition 4.6, Remark 4.7], we have $\text{loc}_p(s') \in H_f^1(\mathbf{Q}_p, N_\rho^\sharp(2))$. Then by [Liu, Lemma 4.12(2,3,5)] and (3,4) above, we have

$$(5.5.1) \quad p^{\nu-\nu_\square} \mid \sum_{v \notin \{\ell, \ell'\}} \langle s', \Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r},\underline{\ell}}^\nu \rangle_v.$$

Since $\Psi_w(s') = 0$ by (1), we also have

$$(5.5.2) \quad \langle s', \Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r},\underline{\ell}}^\nu \rangle_\ell = 0.$$

Let ϕ_0 be a generator of $\Gamma(\mathcal{S}_{\ell, \ell', \mathfrak{r}, \mathfrak{r}^+}, \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu)/[\ker \phi^{\text{rlf}}]$ which is a free \mathbf{Z}/p^ν -module of rank 1. Then by the choice of s, w in (1), and Theorem 5.13, we have

$$\sum_{\mathfrak{S}_{\ell, \mathfrak{r}}^b} \phi_0(\delta^\circ(\vartheta(x))) \in p^{\nu_0} \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu - p^{\nu_0+1} \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu.$$

By the choice of w' in (1) and Theorem 5.15, we have

$$(5.5.3) \quad \langle s', \Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r},\underline{\ell}}^\nu \rangle_{\ell'} \in p^{\nu_0} \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu - p^{\nu_0+1} \mathbf{Z}/p^\nu.$$

Here, we have used the fact that p is coprime to $|(\mathbf{Z}/\mathfrak{r} \cap \mathbf{Z})^\times|$, $|\text{Cl}(F)_\mathfrak{r}|$, $2(1-\ell)$, and $\ell+1$.

Take $\nu \in \mathbf{Z}$ such that $\nu > \nu_0 + \nu_\square$. Then the combination of (5.5.1), (5.5.2) and (5.5.3) contradicts with the following well-known fact:

$$\sum_v \langle s', \Theta_{p,\mathfrak{r},\underline{\ell}}^\nu \rangle_v = 0$$

due to the global class field theory and the fact that p is odd, where the sum is taken over all primes v . Theorem 5.5 is proved. \square

REFERENCES

- [SGA1] *Revêtements étales et groupe fondamental (SGA 1)*, Documents Mathématiques (Paris) [Mathematical Documents (Paris)], vol. 3, Société Mathématique de France, Paris, 2003 (French). Séminaire de géométrie algébrique du Bois Marie 1960–61. [Algebraic Geometry Seminar of Bois Marie 1960-61]; Directed by A. Grothendieck; With two papers by M. Raynaud; Updated and annotated reprint of the 1971 original [Lecture Notes in Math., 224, Springer, Berlin; MR0354651 (50 #7129)]. MR2017446 ↑14
- [BG99] E. Bachmat and E. Z. Goren, *On the non-ordinary locus in Hilbert-Blumenthal surfaces*, Math. Ann. **313** (1999), no. 3, 475–506, DOI 10.1007/s002080050270. MR1678541 ↑3, 28
- [BK90] S. Bloch and K. Kato, *L-functions and Tamagawa numbers of motives*, The Grothendieck Festschrift, Vol. I, Progr. Math., vol. 86, Birkhäuser Boston, Boston, MA, 1990, pp. 333–400. MR1086888 (92g:11063) ↑38
- [BLR91] N. Boston, H. W. Lenstra Jr., and K. A. Ribet, *Quotients of group rings arising from two-dimensional representations*, C. R. Acad. Sci. Paris Sér. I Math. **312** (1991), no. 4, 323–328 (English, with French summary). MR1094193 ↑35, 39
- [BL84] J.-L. Brylinski and J.-P. Labesse, *Cohomologie d'intersection et fonctions L de certaines variétés de Shimura*, Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4) **17** (1984), no. 3, 361–412 (French). MR777375 (86i:11026) ↑35, 40, 44
- [Car86] H. Carayol, *Sur la mauvaise réduction des courbes de Shimura*, Compositio Math. **59** (1986), no. 2, 151–230 (French). MR860139 ↑27, 32
- [Che] C. X. Cheng, *Ihara's Lemma for Shimura curves over totally real fields and multiplicity two*. preprint, available at <https://www.math.uni-bielefeld.de/~ccheng/Research/Multi2.pdf>. ↑32
- [Del79] P. Deligne, *Variétés de Shimura: interprétation modulaire, et techniques de construction de modèles canoniques*, Automorphic forms, representations and L-functions (Proc. Sympos. Pure Math., Oregon State Univ., Corvallis, Ore., 1977), Proc. Sympos. Pure Math., XXXIII, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, R.I., 1979, pp. 247–289 (French). MR546620 ↑8
- [Dim05] M. Dimitrov, *Galois representations modulo p and cohomology of Hilbert modular varieties*, Ann. Sci. École Norm. Sup. (4) **38** (2005), no. 4, 505–551, DOI 10.1016/j.ansens.2005.03.005 (English, with English and French summaries). MR2172950 (2006k:11100) ↑29, 30
- [Gar87] P. B. Garrett, *Decomposition of Eisenstein series: Rankin triple products*, Ann. of Math. (2) **125** (1987), no. 2, 209–235, DOI 10.2307/1971310. MR881269 (88m:11033) ↑5
- [Kol90] V. A. Kolyvagin, *Euler systems*, The Grothendieck Festschrift, Vol. II, Progr. Math., vol. 87, Birkhäuser Boston, Boston, MA, 1990, pp. 435–483. MR1106906 (92g:11109) ↑5, 6
- [Lan13] K.-W. Lan, *Arithmetic compactifications of PEL-type Shimura varieties*, London Mathematical Society Monographs Series, vol. 36, Princeton University Press, Princeton, NJ, 2013. MR3186092 ↑11
- [LS] K.-W. Lan and B. Stroh, *Nearby cycles of automorphic étale sheaves*. preprint, available at <http://www-users.math.umn.edu/~kwlan/articles/bonn-2016.pdf>. ↑30
- [Liu16] Y. Liu, *Hirzebruch–Zagier cycles and twisted triple product Selmer groups*, Invent. Math. **205** (2016), no. 3, 693–780, DOI 10.1007/s00222-016-0645-9. MR3539925 ↑5, 6, 41, 45
- [Liu] ———, *Bounding cubic-triple product Selmer groups of elliptic curves*. preprint, available at http://www.math.northwestern.edu/~liuyf/cubic_primitive.pdf. ↑6, 12, 29, 31, 36, 37, 38, 39, 40, 41, 43, 44, 45
- [Nek00] J. Nekovář, *p-adic Abel-Jacobi maps and p-adic heights*, The arithmetic and geometry of algebraic cycles (Banff, AB, 1998), CRM Proc. Lecture Notes, vol. 24, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI, 2000, pp. 367–379. MR1738867 (2002e:14011) ↑45
- [PSR87] I. Piatetski-Shapiro and S. Rallis, *Rankin triple L functions*, Compositio Math. **64** (1987), no. 1, 31–115. MR911357 (89k:11037) ↑5
- [Rib90] K. A. Ribet, *On modular representations of $\text{Gal}(\overline{\mathbf{Q}}/\mathbf{Q})$ arising from modular forms*, Invent. Math. **100** (1990), no. 2, 431–476, DOI 10.1007/BF01231195. MR1047143 ↑2
- [Ser96] J.-P. Serre, *Two letters on quaternions and modular forms (mod p)*, Israel J. Math. **95** (1996), 281–299, DOI 10.1007/BF02761043. With introduction, appendix and references by R. Livné. MR1418297 ↑2
- [TX16] Y. Tian and L. Xiao, *On Goren–Oort stratification for quaternionic Shimura varieties*, Compositio Math. **152** (2016), 2134–2220, DOI 10.1112/S0010437X16007326. ↑6, 8, 10, 11, 18, 20, 21, 26
- [TX14] ———, *Tate cycles on some quaternionic Shimura varieties mod p* (2014). [arXiv:math/1410.2321](https://arxiv.org/abs/math/1410.2321). ↑3, 21, 22, 26, 28, 34, 43
- [Yu03] C.-F. Yu, *On the supersingular locus in Hilbert-Blumenthal 4-folds*, J. Algebraic Geom. **12** (2003), no. 4, 653–698, DOI 10.1090/S1056-3911-03-00352-7. MR1993760 ↑3, 28
- [Zin82] T. Zink, *Über die schlechte Reduktion einiger Shimuramannigfaltigkeiten*, Compositio Math. **45** (1982), no. 1, 15–107 (German). MR648660 (83k:14040) ↑12, 13, 14

DEPARTMENT OF MATHEMATICS, NORTHWESTERN UNIVERSITY, EVANSTON IL 60208, UNITED STATES
E-mail address: `liuyf@math.northwestern.edu`

MATHEMATISCHES INSTITUT, UNIVERSITÄT BONN, 53115 BONN, GERMANY
E-mail address: `tian@math.uni-bonn.de`